Streamlined Greek

R C Bass

Streamlined Greek

First published: 2017

© R C Bass 2017

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form, without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available via email as a free pdf download under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-Share Alike 3.0 Unported Licence. The terms of the licence can be viewed at http://creativecommons.org

ISBN: 978 0 9576725 8 1

Published by RCB Publications

Also available:
Streamlined Greek Answer Book ISBN 978 0 9576725 9 8
Latin as an Honour Book 1 ISBN 978 0 9576725 0 5
Latin as an Honour Book 2 ISBN 978 0 9576725 3 6
Latin as an Honour Book 3 ISBN 978 0 9576725 4 3
Latin as an Honour Answer Book ISBN 978 0 9576725 5 0

Published by Galore Park:
Latin Vocabulary for Key Stage 3 ISBN 978 0 9036276 6 5
Latin Pocket Notes ISBN 978 1 9070477 1 8
Latin for Common Entrance 13+ Level 1 Exam Practice Questions ISBN 978 1 4718 5345 6
Latin for Common Entrance 13+ Level 2 Exam Practice Questions ISBN 978 1 4718 5347 0
Latin for Common Entrance 13+ Level 3 Exam Practice Questions ISBN 978 1 4718 5349 4
Latin for Common Entrance 13+ Level 1 Exam Practice Answers ISBN 978 1 4718 5346 3
Latin for Common Entrance 13+ Level 2 Exam Practice Answers ISBN 978 1 4718 5348 7
Latin for Common Entrance 13+ Level 3 Exam Practice Answers ISBN 978 1 4718 5350 0

Fonts: Arial, New Athena Unicode

Typeset by R C Bass

Front cover: Parthenon from the south (courtesy Wikimedia Commons)

robertcharlesbass@gmail.com
http://www.rcbass.co.uk

… being so long in the lowest form I gained an immense advantage over the cleverer boys. They all went on to learn Latin and Greek and splendid things like that. But I was taught English. … And when in after years my schoolfellows who had won prizes and distinction for writing such beautiful Latin poetry and pithy Greek epigrams had to come down again to common English, to earn their living or make their way, I did not feel myself at any disadvantage. Naturally I am biased in favour of boys learning English. I would make them all learn English: and then I would let the clever ones learn Latin as an honour, and Greek as a treat. But the only thing I would whip them for is not knowing English. I would whip them hard for that.

Sir Winston Churchill
My Early Life: A Roving Commission
(1930)

… πόνου τοι χωρὶς οὐδὲν εὐτυχεῖ.
No success comes without effort.

Sophocles
Electra, 945
(c. 410 BC)

γυναικὶ καὶ παισίν

Contents

	Note to the Teacher	page vii
§1	Introduction to the Pupil; A Note on Accents	page 1
§2	The Greek Alphabet: the letters	page 2
§3	The Greek Alphabet: breathing marks	page 4
§4	Verbs: The Present Tense	page 6
§5	Masculine Nouns in -ος	page 8
§6	Third Person Singulars	page 9
§7	Plural Nouns	page 10
§8	Third Person Plurals	page 12
§9	The Negative	page 13
§10	Accusative Singulars	page 15
§11	Accusative Plurals	page 18
§12	The Genitive Case	page 22
§13	Genitive Sandwiches	page 23
§14	The Dative Case	page 24
§15	Revision	page 26
§16	Five Prepositions	page 27
§17	Feminine Nouns in -η	page 28
§18	'To be'	page 31
§19	Feminine Nouns in -α	page 32
§20	Revision	page 34
§21	Neuter Nouns in -ον	page 35
§22	Summary of *the*; τε… καί…	page 37
§23	Sentence Connection	page 39
§24	Summary of Nouns	page 40
§25	Adjectives like σοφός	page 43
§26	Adjectives like φίλιος	page 46
§27	The Imperfect Tense	page 48
§28	Nouns like κριτής and νεανίας	page 51
§29	The Aorist Tense	page 53
§30	The Imperfect of *to be;* θάλασσα	page 56

§31 Some light revision page 58
§32 Open Questions page 59
§33 Infinitives page 62

§34 The Future Tense page 65
§35 Feminine Nouns in –ος page 66
§36 Imperatives – giving orders page 68

§37 The possessive dative page 71
§38 Revision Blitz! page 72
§39 Elision page 79

§40 μέν... δέ... page 80
§41 *The enemy defeat the Athenians in Sicily, but do not kill those who can recite the poetry of Euripides.* page 84
§42 Quick revision: infinitives page 85

§43 Some notes on the definite article 'the' page 86
§44 More question words page 88
§45 Third Declension Nouns: masculine and feminine group page 91

§46 Numbers page 93
§47 Time page 94
§48 Third Declension Nouns: neuter group page 96

§49 αὐτός: him, her, it, them; -self page 97
§50 *Despite Poseidon's hostility, Odysseus, trying to return home, escapes to Calypso's island. Athene sends Hermes to tell her not to keep Odysseus imprisoned there.* page 101
§51 Some irregular nouns page 102

§52 τις page 104
§53 *Codrus saves Athens by sacrificing his own life.* page 106
§54 Augments page 107

§55 Compound Verbs page 108
§56 *The singer Arion, sailing from Italy to Corinth, escapes from some wicked sailors in an unusual way.* page 110
§57 Middle Verbs page 111

§58 The future, imperfect and aorist middle page 114
§59 *The Greek fleet cannot set sail until the general's daughter is sacrificed.* page 115
§60 Some revision exercises page 116

§61 Strong aorists page 118
§62 *Paris, abandoned and left to die by his father Priam, returns to Troy as a young man.* page 122
§63 Present participles page 123

§64 *A nocturnal spying mission* page 126
§65 The passive voice and 'by' page 127
§66 Some tricky aorist passives page 130

§67 Present participle passive page 131
§68 Aorist participles active, middle and passive page 131
§69 Strong aorist active participles page 133

§70 Future Participles page 135
§71 Middle verbs: strong aorist participles page 136
§72 Summary of Participles. Revision. page 137

§73 *After the Greeks finally destroy Troy, Odysseus has a difficult journey home.* page 139
§74 Regular comparison of adjectives in -ος page 140
§75 Personal pronouns page 143

§76 Aspect: infinitives page 144
§77 Aspect: imperatives page 145
§78 *After a quarrel with Agamemnon, Achilles will not fight. He sends his best friend, Patroclus, into battle against the Trojans.* page 147

§79 Contracted Verbs in -εω page 148
§80 Contracted Verbs in -αω page 150
§81 A note about futures page 153

§82 *Odysseus is dismayed by his men's treatment of Helios' (the Sun God's) cattle.* page 154
§83 Possessive adjectives page 155
§84 *Great, big* page 156

§85 *Many* and *all* page 157
§86 *Sweet* and *true* page 159
§87 *Odysseus, missing his wife Penelope, gets away from Calypso with difficulty.* page 162

§88 *This* and *that* page 163
§89 *that* page 165
§90 *The last stand of the general Leonidas and his Spartans at Thermopylae when surrounded by the Persians.* page 167

§91	More about comparison of adjectives	page 168
§92	Comparison of adverbs	page 170
§93	Reflexive pronouns	page 172
§94	Relative Clauses	page 174
§95	*With the help of Ariadne, daughter of King Minos of Crete, Theseus kills the Minotaur and escapes from the labyrinth.*	page 177
§96	Verbs in -μι. Consolidation.	page 176
§97	Impersonal verbs	page 179
§98	*Two brothers fight over who shall rule Thebes. Their sister tries to do her duty to the one who is dishonoured.*	page 182
§99	The genitive absolute	page 183
§100	*Odysseus learns from Eurylochus what the witch Circe has done to his men, and confronts her.*	page 184
§101	Purpose Clauses: the subjunctive. Aspect.	page 185
§102	Purpose clauses in the past: the optative	page 188
§103	Consecutive (result) clauses	page 190
§104	*A king's plan to keep his money safe is foiled by a workman and his sons.*	page 193
§105	Direct and Indirect Speech	page 194
§106	Indirect statements: introduction	page 196
§107	Indirect statements: Type 1 – infinitives	page 198
§108	Indirect statements: Type 2 – participles	page 201
§109	Indirect statements: Type 3 – ὅτι / ὡς	page 203
§110	*The Trojans ignore the advice of Cassandra, Laocoön and Apollo about the wooden horse.*	page 205
§111	Indirect questions	page 206
§112	*Rhea, wife of Cronos, foils his plan to get rid of his own children, and Zeus eventually deposes him.*	page 209
§113	Conditional clauses	page 210
§114	*Alexander shows his faith in Philip, one of his doctors.*	page 213
	Learning Vocabulary Checklist	page 214
	Grammar Summary	page 226
	Table of verbs	page 238
	Abbreviations	page 240
	English – Greek Wordlist	page 240
	Greek – English Wordlist	page 249

Note to the Teacher

Despite the sterling efforts of Kris Waite and Fred Pragnell, the prep school Greek sector, which is a small one, is poorly served. There is no money in it for publishers, of course. Secondary level text books have therefore often been used *faute de mieux*, but the basic requirements of young beginners (e.g. unsophisticated explanations, spacious lay-out, clear and large text) are different from those of more mature students. Hence *Streamlined Greek,* a course whose aim is to guide young hellenists along the road towards GCSE, whilst providing practice in reading continuous prose. No Latin is assumed.

I am grateful to Mike Bull for his encouragement, and to Fred Pragnell for pointing out many slips and suggesting many improvements.

R C Bass

robertcharlesbass@gmail.com
www.rcbass.co.uk

§1 Introduction to the Pupil

… to read the Latin and Greek authors in the original is a sublime luxury…

Thomas Jefferson
(US President 1801-1809)
Letter to Dr Joseph Priestley, 27th January 1800

Welcome to ancient (or classical) Greek, the language of 5th and 4th century BC Athens. It is a great, flexible language written in a beautiful alphabet – the first ever alphabet in Europe. The word *alphabet* itself is a combination of the names of the first two letters of the Greek alphabet, *alpha* (α) and *beta* (β). As you get to know Greek words you will gain a real appreciation of the influence Greek has had on English. Many English words are taken directly from Greek, such as *catastrophe, drama, crisis, metropolis* and *echo*; and many words contain Greek elements like *-logy* or *-nomy* or *-scope*.

The language, apart from being fascinating in itself, is a window into the world of the ancient Greeks, who laid western civilisation's foundations in the sciences, arts, architecture, mathematics and other areas of human activity. There is no better way of finding out what made the ancient Greeks tick than by learning ancient Greek. Good luck!

A note on accents

In addition to breathing marks, you will notice that the Greek in this book contains acute (´), grave (`) and circumflex (˜) accents. These were introduced in about 200BC – later than the period of Greek you are studying – by Aristophanes, head of the great library at Alexandria. They were an aid to foreigners, to help them pitch their voice correctly when speaking Greek words, including words which were no longer common in his time. When and where to write these accents is a topic for advanced study which you do not need to worry about at present. Over the years it has become conventional to include accents in printed Greek, and because a page of Greek looks naked without them, they have been included in this book.

§2 The Greek Alphabet: the letters

There are 24 letters in the Greek alphabet. They can be divided into three groups:

1. The easiest group – those that look like English letters and are pronounced like them:
   e.g. α β δ ε ι κ ο τ υ

2. The trickiest group – those that look like English letters but are annoyingly NOT pronounced like them. Pay attention to these!
   e.g. γ H N/ν P/ρ X/χ

3. Letter shapes which will be completely new to you:
   e.g. ζ θ μ ξ π φ χ ψ ω

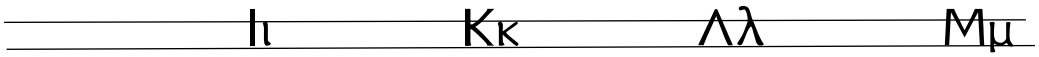
They appear below, in three groups of eight, in capitals and then lower case. Their names are given, and their sounds indicated by the **bold underlinings**. Study them carefully. It is a good idea to practise writing them down several times, noting where each letter extends above and below the lines.

Αα	Ββ	Γγ	Δδ
alpha	beta	gamma	delta
b**a**t/f**a**ther	**b**at	**g**et	**d**og

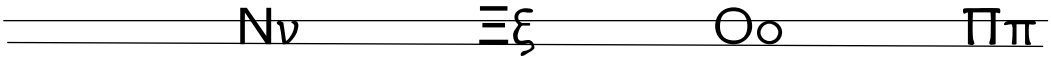
Εε	Ζζ	Ηη	Θθ
epsilon	zeta	eta	theta
b**e**t	wi**sd**om	b**are**	**th**in

Exercise 2.1
Read aloud these combinations of Greek letters. Each one sounds like an English word. Write down the English word, as it is correctly spelt in English.

1. βαγ
2. βεδ
3. βαθ
4. δεθ
5. δη
6. βεγ
7. βη
8. δαβ
9. βαδ
10. αδ



Ιι	Κκ	Λλ	Μμ
iota	kappa	lambda	mu
bit	kite	leg	met

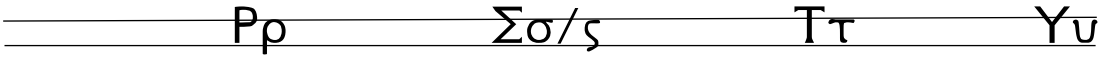


Νν	Ξξ	Οο	Ππ
nu	xi	omicron	pi
nut	box	not	pot

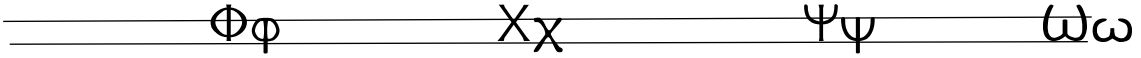
Exercise 2.2

Read aloud these combinations of Greek letters. Each one sounds like an English word. Write down the English word, as it is correctly spelt in English.

1. κιλ
2. πικ
3. θικ
4. μαν
5. μαδ
6. μοπ
7. βακ
8. βαξ
9. μιλκ
10. πλαν
11. κλαπ
12. πλοδ
13. κλιπ
14. κιλν
15. δαμπ
16. κλαμπ
17. δεδλι
18. πονδ
19. νεκ
20. μοπ



Ρρ	Σσ/ς	Ττ	Υυ
rho	sigma	tau	upsilon
rhubarb	sad	top	French tu (*you*)
	(ς at the end of a word, σ everywhere else)		



Φφ	Χχ	Ψψ	Ωω
phi	chi	psi	omega
Philip	Bach	lips	slow

Exercise 2.3
Read aloud these combinations of Greek letters. Each one sounds like an English word. Write down the English word, as it is correctly spelt in English.

1. σωπ
2. ρωπ
3. σλωπ
4. τραπ
5. τρακ
6. τραξ
7. φιτ
8. φιλμ
9. φιλιπ
10. φελτ
11. λιπ
12. λιψ
13. ταπ
14. πλοτ
15. φλατ
16. στραπ
17. λοστ
18. βεγς
19. πολιτιξ
20. στρικτ

§3 The Greek Alphabet: breathing marks

When a Greek word begins with a vowel (α, ε, η, ι, ο, ω, υ) a mark always appears above it, to show whether it is pronounced with an *h*-sound in front of it or not. It is rather like the difference in English between *hit* and *it*, or *hat* and *at*.

Vowels pronounced with an *h*-sound are called 'aspirated' – they are said to have a 'hard' or 'rough' breathing (like *hit* and *hat* above).

Vowels not pronounced with an *h*-sound are called 'unaspirated' – they are said to have a 'soft or 'smooth breathing (like *it* and *at* above).

In Greek writing the English word *hat* would be written like this: ἁτ,
but the English word *at* would be written like this: ἀτ.

In other words, the ῾ sign means than an *h* sound comes before the vowel, and the ᾽ sign means that there is no *h* sound before the vowel.

Exercise 3.1
Read aloud these combinations of Greek letters. Each one sounds like an English word. Pay especial attention to the breathing marks at the beginning of each word. Write down the English word, as it is correctly spelt in English.

1. ἰτ
2. ἴτ
3. ἐλιφαντ
4. ἐμιλι
5. ὠπεν
6. ἴπ
7. ὦμ
8. ἅππι
9. ἰν
10. ἴμ
11. ὁπ
12. ἐνδ
13. ὁτ
14. ἀντ
15. ἐμπτι
16. ἀνδ
17. ἁνδ
18. ὠνλι
19. ἰφ
20. ὦπ

The alphabet – quick checklist

Α α a	Β β b	Γ γ g	Δ δ d
Ε ε e	Ζ ζ zd	Η η air	Θ θ th
Ι ι i	Κ κ k	Λ λ l	Μ μ m
Ν ν n	Ξ ξ x	Ο ο o	Π π p
Ρ ρ r	Σ σ/ς s	Τ τ t	Υ υ u
Φ φ ph	Χ χ ch	Ψ ψ ps	ω ω oh

Exercise 3.2
Read aloud these Greek words. They have passed directly into English. Write down the English word.

1. δραμα
2. βασις
3. ἐχω
4. ἀσθμα
5. γενεσις
6. πενταθλον
7. ἰρις
8. κλιμαξ
9. ἀποστροφη
10. μητροπολις
11. ὑποθεσις
12. παραλυσις
13. ὁριζων
14. χαρακτηρ
15. μαραθων
16. θεσις
17. νεμεσις
18. πανθηρ
19. καταστροφη
20. κριτηριον

Well done – you now know how to read the sounds made by Greek letters. There are still one or two other bits which have not been covered, but we can deal with those when we meet them. Now can now get on to some real Greek.

§4 Verbs: The Present Tense

We are going to start with the present tense. Always practise reading Greek aloud.

Present Tense

person	number	Greek	English
1st	singular	παύω[1]	I stop/I am stopping
2nd	singular	παύεις	You stop *(singular)*/You are stopping
3rd	singular	παύει	He *or* she *or* it stops/is stopping
1st	plural	παύομεν	We stop/We are stopping
2nd	plural	παύετε	You stop *(plural)*/are stopping
3rd	plural	παύουσι(ν)[2]*	They stop/they are stopping

* the ν is added at the end of a sentence, or when the next word begins with a vowel. The Greek vowels are: α, ε, η, ι, ο, ω, υ.

[1] This word is pronounced *pow-oh* – the αυ combination is said like the *ow* in cow. Two vowels combining their sounds into one in this way are called diphthongs.

[2] This word is pronounced *pow-oosi(n)* – the ου combination is said like the *oo* in boo.

If you study the table of παύω, you will spot the following personal endings – they show you the person who is doing the action. These endings can be stuck on to different front bits (stems) to make different words.

Personal Endings	
-ω	I
-εις	You *(singular)*
-ει	He *or* she *or* it
-ομεν	We
-ετε	You *(plural)*
-ουσι(ν)	They

Vocabulary 1	
παύω	I stop
ἀκούω	I hear, listen to
βαίνω	I go
γράφω	I write
διδάσκω	I teach
διώκω	I chase
τρέχω	I run
φυλάσσω	I guard

Exercise 4.1

1. You (singular) stop.
2. He is writing.
3. They chase.
4. I am guarding.
5. We write.
6. We are teaching.
7. You (plural) go.
8. They are listening.
9. You (singular) run.
10. He guards.

Exercise 4.2

1. He is teaching.
2. I chase.
3. You (singular) write.
4. We hear.
5. You (plural) teach.
6. We are running.
7. They are going.
8. They stop.
9. We are going.
10. I am writing.

Exercise 4.3

1. παύομεν.
2. βαίνω.
3. γράφεις.
4. ἀκούετε.
5. διδάσκει.
6. γράφετε.
7. διώκεις.
8. ἀκούουσιν.
9. παύετε.
10. τρέχουσιν.

Exercise 4.4

1. τρέχει.
2. φυλάσσεις.
3. γράφουσιν.
4. τρέχομεν.
5. διώκει.
6. βαίνετε.
7. παύουσιν.
8. γράφομεν.
9. διδάσκομεν.
10. φυλάσσουσιν.

§5 Masculine Nouns in -ος

Nouns, if you remember, are the names of people, places and things. A very common declension (declension means 'noun group') in Greek is one ending in -ος.

The word for *the*

Greek has a word for *the.* The masculine form of the word for *the* is ὁ. We'll meet the other forms later. Here is a list of masculine nouns ending in -ος.

Vocabulary 2	
ὁ ἄγγελος*	the messenger
ὁ δοῦλος	the slave
ὁ διδάσκαλος	the teacher
ὁ θεός	the god
ὁ ἰατρός	the doctor
ὁ ἵππος	the horse
ὁ στρατηγός	the general
ὁ στρατός	the army

* This word is pronounced *angelos* (with a hard g). The double gamma – γγ – is said like the *ng* of *triangle*.

§6 Third Person Singulars

When a singular noun is doing an action, the verb goes in to the third person singular. In other words, the verb must have the *he/she/it* ending, -ει.

Example
The general is running = ὁ στρατηγὸς τρέχει.

Exercise 6.1

1. The messenger is writing.
2. The slave is guarding.
3. The teacher is teaching.
4. The god is going.
5. The horse is running.
6. The army is chasing.
7. The general is listening.
8. The army is going.
9. The horse is chasing.
10. The doctor is listening.

Exercise 6.2

1. ὁ στρατὸς φυλάσσει.
2. ὁ ἵππος βαίνει.
3. ὁ στρατηγὸς γράφει.
4. ὁ θεὸς ἀκούει.
5. ὁ διδάσκαλος ἀκούει.
6. ὁ δοῦλος τρέχει.
7. ὁ ἄγγελος τρέχει.
8. ὁ ἰατρὸς γράφει.
9. ὁ θεὸς διδάσκει.
10. ὁ στρατὸς τρέχει.

§7 Plural Nouns

This is easy. To change a noun in -ος into the plural, you just replace the -ος with -οι**.**

The word for *the* has to change as well in the plural (just as in French *le* or *la* words have to be *les* in the plural).

In Greek the word for *the*, ὁ, becomes οἱ in the plural. (This is pronounced *hoi* [rhymes with *boy*]. And notice that the breathing mark, ῾ , is written not over the first letter, as you might expect, but over the ι.)

So, to summarise:

Example:
The horse = ὁ ἵππος The horses = οἱ ἵπποι

Vocabulary 3	
ὁ λόγος	word
ὁ δῆμος	people
ὁ κίνδυνος	danger
ὁ ξένος	stranger, friend
ὁ ποταμός	river
οἱ σύμμαχοι	allies* (plural)

* *allies* are people who fight on your side in a war.

Exercise 7.1
Complete the following table. The first answer is given, to get you started.

	English singular	*Greek singular*	*English plural*	*Greek plural*
1.	the messenger	ὁ ἄγγελος	the messengers	οἱ ἄγγελοι
2.	the army	ὁ στρατός	the armies	.....
3.	the horse	ὁ ἵππος	the horses	.....
4.	the word	ὁ λόγος	the words	.....
5.	the danger	ὁ κίνδυνος	the dangers	.....
6.	the stranger	ὁ ξένος	the strangers	.....
7.	the general	ὁ στρατηγός	the generals	.....
8.	the teacher	ὁ διδάσκαλος	the teachers	.....
9.	the slave	ὁ δοῦλος	the slaves	.....
10.	the god	ὁ θεός	the gods	.....

§8 Third Person Plurals

When a plural noun is doing an action, the verb goes in to the third person plural. In other words, the verb must have the *they* ending, -ουσι(ν)

Example:
The generals are running = οἱ στρατηγοὶ τρέχουσιν.

Exercise 8.1

1. The messenger is running.
2. The messengers are running.
3. The stranger listens.
4. The strangers listen.
5. The slave is writing.
6. The slaves are writing.
7. The river is going.
8. The rivers are going.
9. The teacher is teaching.
10. The teachers are teaching.

Exercise 8.2

1. ὁ ἄγγελος διδάσκει.
2. οἱ ἄγγελοι διδάσκουσιν.
3. ὁ ξένος φυλάσσει.
4. οἱ ξένοι φυλάσσουσιν.
5. ὁ δοῦλος διώκει.
6. οἱ δοῦλοι διώκουσιν.
7. ὁ στρατηγὸς τρέχει.
8. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τρέχουσιν.
9. ὁ ἵππος ἀκούει.
10. οἱ ἵπποι ἀκούουσιν.

§9 The Negative

The negative simply means saying *not.* For example, *He is <u>not</u> stupid, They are <u>not</u> running, We do <u>not</u> talk.*

The Greek word for *not* is οὐ or οὐκ

οὐ is used when the next word begins with a consonant.
οὐκ is used when the next word begins with a vowel.

(This is a bit like English, when we say *an apple* rather than *a apple.* You will find as you study more Greek that the Greeks were very sensitive to the way their language sounded, and made little alterations so that their words would sound nicer).

Examples:

He is writing.	γράφει.
He is not writing.	οὐ γράφει. (οὐ + consonant)
He is listening.	ἀκούει.
He is not listening.	οὐκ ἀκούει. (οὐκ + vowel)

Vocabulary 4	
οὐ / οὐκ	not
ἄγω	I lead
ἀποκτείνω	I kill
θεραπεύω	I honour, worship, heal, cure, look after
λαμβάνω	I take, capture
μένω	I stay, remain
πέμπω	I send
φεύγω	I flee

Exercise 9.1

1. ἀποκτέινει.
2. μένομεν.
3. οὐ πέμπετε.
4. λαμβάνεις.
5. οὐκ ἄγομεν.
6. θεραπεύετε.
7. οὐ φεύγετε.
8. οὐ διδάσκει.
9. οὐκ ἀκούετε.
10. οὐ γράφει.

Exercise 9.2

1. ὁ δοῦλος φεύγει.
2. ὁ δοῦλος οὐ φεύγει.
3. οἱ δοῦλοι φεύγουσιν.
4. οἱ δοῦλοι οὐ φεύγουσιν.
5. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἄγει.
6. οἱ στρατηγοὶ οὐκ ἄγουσιν.
7. οἱ σύμμαχοι μένουσιν.
8. οἱ σύμμαχοι οὐ μένουσιν.
9. οἱ δοῦλοι οὐ διδάσκουσιν.
10. ὁ δοῦλος οὐ γράφει.

Exercise 9.3

1. I stay.
2. I do not stay.
3. We lead.
4. We do not lead.
5. He kills.
6. He does not kill.
7. The allies are running.
8. The allies are not running.
9. The army flees.
10. The doctors are staying.

§10 Accusative Singulars

'Accusative' is the grammatical term applied to a noun in a sentence which is an OBJECT – someone is performing an action on it.

For example, in the sentence *'Tom chases Jerry', Tom* is the SUBJECT of the verb (he is the doer of the action) and *Jerry* is the OBJECT of the verb (he is on the receiving end of the action).

When a Greek noun in -ος is not the SUBJECT (doer) of the verb, but the OBJECT of a verb (in other words, it is on the receiving end of an action), the -ος changes to -ον.

The word for *the* changes as well, from ὁ to τον.

Example:

The horse is chasing.	ὁ ἵππος διώκει.
We are chasing the horse.	διώκομεν τὸν ἵππον.

Vocabulary 5	
ἔχω	I have
παιδεύω	I train
φέρω	I carry, bring
ὁ ἄνθρωπος	man
ὁ θάνατος	death
ὁ φίλος	friend (male)
οἱ βάρβαροι	foreigners (plural)
οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι	the Athenians (plural)
καί	and

Exercise 10.1

1. He leads an army. (There is no Greek word for *a* or *an*)
2. We train the slave.
3. I do not have a friend.
4. You (singular) kill the man.
5. They chase the horse.
6. We listen to the word.
7. You (plural) chase the slave.
8. I am not leading the army.
9. The horses are running.
10. We do not have an army.

Exercise 10.2

Beware of the word order in this exercise. Sometimes a Greek sentence has its verb at the end, where this verb would not be in English. This change of word order means that you will not always be able to translate Greek into English by going from left to right!

1. ἀκούω τὸν λόγον.
2. ὁ ἄγγελος φίλον ἔχει.
3. ὁ στρατὸς φυλάσσει τὸν ποταμόν.
4. διώκομεν καὶ παιδεύομεν τὸν ἵππον.
5. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι στρατὸν φέρουσιν.
6. ἵππον ἔχω.
7. ὁ ἵππος φέρει τὸν ἄνθρωπον.
8. οἱ βάρβαροι φυλάσσουσι τὸν ποταμόν.
9. τὸν ἵππον διδάσκομεν.
10. ὁ ἄνθρωπος λαμβάνει καὶ παιδεύει τὸν δοῦλον.

Exercise 10.3

1. (The*) Death chases the horse. (**see note on* the*, p.21*)
2. The teachers do not teach the stranger.
3. The men do not hear the word.
4. The people have an army. (*Careful!* – people *is a <u>singular</u> noun*)
5. The general is not leading the man.

Exercise 10.4

1. We are running and fleeing.
2. The slave stays and writes.
3. The man is going. He is not staying.
4. The slaves flee. They do not kill.
5. The men are running and chasing.

Copy out neatly the following table of λόγος. You will complete the blanks in the table as you meet them over the next few chapters.

ὁ λόγος - the word

case		singular	plural
*nominative	*subject*	ὁ λόγος	οἱ λόγοι
*accusative	*object*	τὸν λόγον	
*genitive	*'of'*		
*dative	*'to'* or *'for'*		

* These grammatical words, describing what job the noun is doing in its sentence, are called the CASES. You will be meeting them a lot, so try to learn from the table above what the meaning of each case is – this is given in the second column..

§11 Accusative Plurals

As you know, when a Greek noun in –ος becomes plural, it changes its ending from -ος to –οι. For example ὁ λόγος, *the word*, becomes οἱ λόγοι, *the words.*

When one of these plural nouns is not the SUBJECT (doer) of the verb, but the OBJECT of a verb (in other words, it is on the receiving end of an action), the -οι changes to -ους.

The word for *the* changes as well, from οἱ to τους.

The horses are chasing. οἱ ἵπποι διώκουσιν.
We are chasing the horses. διώκομεν τοὺς ἵππους.

Add this new -ους ending to the noun table you have started, so that it now looks like this:

ὁ λόγος - the word

case		singular	plural
nominative	*subject*	ὁ λόγος	οἱ λόγοι
accusative	*object*	τὸν λόγον	τοὺς λόγους
genitive	*'of'*		
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*		

Vocabulary 6	
ὁ πόλεμος	war
οἱ πολέμιοι	the enemy (plural)
ὁ βίος	life
ὁ ὕπνος	sleep
βλάπτω	I harm
στρατεύω	I march
σῴζω*	I save

* Notice the little iota written below the first ω in this word. This is called an *iota subscript* ('subscript' means 'written underneath'). This used to be written alongside the previous letter (an 'iota adscript'), but was such a slight sound, barely pronounced, that it later dropped to below it.

Exercise 11.1

1. σῴζομεν τοὺς δούλους.
2. φυλάσσεις τοὺς ἵππους.
3. οὐ βλάπτομεν τοὺς φίλους.
4. ἄκουω τοὺς λόγους.
5. ἀποκτείνει τὸν δοῦλον.
6. πολεμίους ἔχομεν.
7. διδάσκει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.
8. ἔχομεν ἵππους.
9. οἱ πολέμιοι στρατεύουσιν.
10. φίλους οὐκ ἔχομεν.

Exercise 11.2

1. We have a horse.
2. We have horses.
3. We worship the gods.
4. I harm the slaves.
5. You (plural) hear the words.
6. He takes the slaves.
7. We have allies.
8. He saves the armies.
9. You (singular) have friends.
10. I do not have a life.

Exercise 11.3

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς βλάπτει τὸν δοῦλον.
2. ὁ δῆμος σῴζει τοὺς δούλους.
3. οἱ δοῦλοι βλάπτουσι τοὺς ἵππους.
4. ὁ ἄγγελος ἀκούει τοὺς λόγους.
5. οἱ σύμμαχοι διώκουσι τοὺς πολεμίους.
6. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι πόλεμον φέρουσιν.
7. ὁ διδάσκαλος διδάσκει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.
8. οἱ στρατοὶ στρατεύουσιν.
9. οἱ ἰατροὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἀποκτείνουσιν.
10. τοὺς λόγους οὐκ ἀκούομεν.

Exercise 11.4

1. Generals* lead armies*.
2. Death† is harming the slaves.
3. The general saves the horses.
4. The foreigners do not listen to the words.
5. The allies are chasing the foreigners.

Notes on 'the'

*add the word for *the* to these words. Classes of people usually have a *the* in front of them in Greek. The same thing happens in French, for example:

> *<u>Les</u> garçons sont plus intelligents que <u>les</u> filles.*
> Boys (in general) are more intelligent than girls (in general).

†add the word for *the* to this word as well. Abstract nouns (nouns you can't touch, like *beauty*, *wisdom*, *honour*) usually have a *the* with them. Here again there is a parallel in French:

> *Nous aimons <u>la</u> liberté.*
> We love freedom.

§12 The Genitive Case

If you look at your table of λόγος you will see that it is now half complete. The next case we are going to look at is the genitive case. Genitive means *of the*. If we were translating the following English sentences into Greek, the underlined words would have to go into the genitive (*of the*) case.

The teacher of the boy.
The playground of the children.
The master of the house.
The horses of the soldiers.

In Greek, the genitive singular ending is -ου (and the word for *the* to go with it is του).

The genitive plural ending is -ων (and the word for *the* to go with it is των).

Add these new endings to your table of λόγος, which should now look like this:

ὁ λόγος - the word

case		singular	plural
nominative	*subject*	ὁ λόγος	οἱ λόγοι
accusative	*object*	τὸν λόγον	τοὺς λόγους
genitive	*'of'*	τοῦ λόγου	τῶν λόγων
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*		

Exercise 12.1

1. Of the horse.
2. Of the horses.
3. Of the general.
4. Of the generals.
5. Of the foreigners.
6. Of the enemy.
7. Of the river.
8. Of the rivers.
9. Of the slave.
10. Of the slaves.

§13 Genitive Sandwiches

Greek uses a neat but unusual word order in dealing with phrases containing a genitive. The genitive goes in the middle of the sandwich with the rest of the phrase, usually the word for *the* and the word it goes with, on the outside.

Example:

The general's slaves = The slaves of the general
= The (of the general) slaves
= οἱ [τοῦ στρατηγοῦ] δοῦλοι

Exercise 13.1

1. The horse of the general.
2. The horses of the general.
3. The horses of the generals.
4. The friend of the slave.
5. The friends of the slave.
6. The friend of the slaves.
7. The friends of the slaves.
8. The words of the messenger.
9. The words of the messengers.
10. The life of the doctor.

Exercise 13.2

1. οἱ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ πολέμιοι.
2. ὁ τοῦ δούλου ἵππος.
3. οἱ τῶν δούλων ἵπποι.
4. ὁ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου φίλος.
5. οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων σύμμαχοι.
6. οἱ τοῦ πολέμου κίνδυνοι.
7. ὁ τῶν δούλων διδάσκαλος.
8. οἱ τῶν στρατηγῶν δοῦλοι.
9. οἱ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ σύμμαχοι.
10. οἱ τοῦ διδασκάλου φίλοι.

Vocabulary 7	
ὁ ἀδελφός	brother
ὁ ἥλιος	sun
κωλύω	I prevent
πείθω	I persuade
τάσσω	I draw up, arrange

Exercise 13.3

1. ὁ τοῦ δούλου ἀδελφὸς φεύγει.
2. ὁ διδάσκαλος πείθει τὸν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ φίλον.
3. ὁ στρατηγὸς τάσσει τοὺς τῶν συμμάχων ἵππους.
4. οἱ τῶν θεῶν λόγοι κωλυούσι τοὺς βαρβάρους.
5. ὁ δοῦλος φέρει τὸν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἵππον.

Exercise 13.4

1. The slaves of the people are worshipping.
2. We are chasing the army of the foreigners.
3. You (singular) listen to the words of the god.
4. The slave of the teacher prevents the danger.
5. The brother's words* persuade the slaves.

* clue: *The brother's words = The words of the brother.*

§14 The Dative Case

The dative case in Greek is used to express *to* or *for*.

In Greek, the dative singular ending is -ῳ (and the word for *the* to go with it is τῳ).
(Note the iotas subscript here – this is a sign of the dative singular in Greek.)

The dative plural ending is -οις (and the word for *the* to go with it is τοις).

Add these new endings to your table of λόγος, which should now look like this:

ὁ λόγος - the word

case		singular	plural
nominative	*subject*	ὁ λόγος	οἱ λόγοι
accusative	*object*	τὸν λόγον	τοὺς λόγους
genitive	*'of'*	τοῦ λόγου	τῶν λόγων
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῷ λόγῳ	τοῖς λόγοις

(This completes your table of λόγος. Once you are familiar with how the different case endings work you will find other noun tables you meet much easier to deal with).

Vocabulary 8	
ἀγγέλλω	I announce
θύω	I sacrifice
παρέχω	I provide, produce
πιστεύω + dative*	I trust, believe

* this means that when you use the verb πιστεύω the person you trust must have a dative ending.

Example:
We trust the general = πιστεύομεν τῷ στρατηγῷ.

Exercise 14.1

1. For the god.
2. For the gods.
3. To the brother.
4. For foreigners.
5. To the doctor.
6. For death.
7. For the men.
8. For the teacher.
9. To the Athenians.
10. For the messenger.

Exercise 14.2

1. We are sacrificing to the gods.
2. I do not trust the slave.
3. You (plural) announce the war to the foreigners.
4. They provide horses for the friends.
5. He does not trust his (=the) brother.

Exercise 14.3

1. οἱ σύμμαχοι τοῖς βαρβάροις οὐ πιστευούσιν.
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἵππον τῷ δούλῳ παρέχει.
3. οἱ πολέμιοι θύουσι τῷ ἡλίῳ.
4. ὁ ἀδελφὸς δούλους τῷ φίλῳ παρέχει.
5. ὁ ἄνθρωπος πιστεύει τῷ δούλῳ.

§15 Revision

Exercise 15.1

1. οὐ πιστεύομεν τοῖς τῶν βαρβάρων θεοῖς.
2. οἱ βάρβαροι οὐ πιστεύουσι τοῖς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
3. ὁ ἄγγελος ἀγγέλλει τοὺς λόγους τῷ στρατηγῷ.
4. ὁ στρατηγὸς τάσσει τὸν στρατὸν.
5. ὁ τῶν Ἀθηναίων στρατὸς κωλύει τοὺς πολεμίους.
6. ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς μένουσιν.
7. οἱ δοῦλοι τὸν κίνδυνον κωλύουσιν.
8. οἱ ἵπποι σῴζουσι τὸν στρατηγὸν.
9. ὁ τοῦ σταρτηγοῦ δοῦλος φύλασσει τοὺς ἵππους.
10. ὁ ποταμὸς κωλύει τὸν στρατόν.

Exercise 15.2

1. The horse is running.
2. The slaves of the doctor are fleeing.
3. The messenger sacrifices to the god.
4. The general draws up his (= the) army.
5. The allies trust the slaves.

Exercise 15.3

1. I hear the words of the messenger.
2. The man trusts his (= the) friend.
3. The slave guards the horse.
4. Sleep* prevents the enemy.
5. The slaves persuade the teacher.

**Sleep* is an abstract noun. See the note (†) on page 22.

§16 Five Prepositions

Here are five prepositions which are common in Greek. The word which follows each preposition must have an accusative or genitive or dative ending – as indicated in Vocabulary 9.

Vocabulary 9	
ἀπό + genitive	(away) from
εἰς + accusative	into
ἐκ / ἐξ* + genitive	out of
ἐν + dative	in, on
πρός + accusative	to, towards

* ἐξ is used instead of ἐκ if the following word begins with a vowel (α, ε, η, ι, ο, ω, υ).

Exercise 16.1

1. Towards the river.
2. In the river.
3. Out of the river.
4. Away from the river.
5. Into the river.
6. In wars.
7. In the war.
8. Towards the horse.
9. In life.
10. In danger.

Exercise 16.2

1. ὁ δοῦλος πρὸς τὸν ἵππον τρέχει.
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἄγει τὸν στρατὸν ἐκ κινδύνου.
3. οἱ πολέμιοι φεύγουσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
4. οἱ δοῦλοι φέρουσι τοὺς ἵππους πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν.
5. ὁ ἄνθρωπος τῷ θεῷ ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ θύει.

Exercise 16.3

1. The men are running into the river.
2. The army is marching towards the enemy.
3. The strangers are fleeing from danger.
4. Allies* kill foreigners* in war.
5. The horses run out of danger.

* See the note (*) on page 21.

Exercise 16.4

1. We do not stay in danger.
2. You (singular) are sacrificing in the river.
3. I am running towards the teacher.
4. You (plural) are going into war.
5. I am fleeing from the dangers.

§17 Feminine Nouns in -η

After getting to know well the masculine noun ὁ λόγος, it is now time to meet our first feminine noun, ἡ νίκη - *the victory*. Note that we now meet as well the feminine forms of the word for *the*.

ἡ νίκη - the victory

case		singular	plural
nominative	*subject*	ἡ νίκη	αἱ νῖκαι
accusative	*object*	τὴν νίκην	τὰς νῖκας
genitive	*'of'*	τῆς νίκης	τῶν νικῶν
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῇ νίκῃ	ταῖς νίκαις

Vocabulary 10	
ἡ νίκη	victory
ἡ βοή	shout
ἡ γῆ	land, earth
ἡ εἰρήνη	peace
ἡ ἐπιστολή	letter
ἡ κώμη	village
ἡ μάχη	battle
ἡ φίλη	friend (female); girlfriend
ἡ φωνή	voice, sound

Exercise 17.1

1. ὁ δοῦλος ἐπιστολὴν γράφει.
2. ἀκούομεν τὰς τοῦ στρατοῦ βοάς.
3. οἱ σύμμαχοι νίκην ἔχουσιν.
4. οἱ πολέμιοι στρατεύουσιν πρὸς τὴν κώμην.
5. αἱ φίλαι ἐν τῇ κώμῃ μένουσιν.
6. ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ φωνὴ πείθει τοὺς συμμάχους.
7. ὁ ἰατρὸς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν πέμπει.
8. ὁ δῆμος ἐκ τῆς κώμης βαίνει.
9. οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων σύμμαχοι τρέχουσιν εἰς τὴν κώμην.
10. ἡ τῶν συμμάχων νίκη παρέχει τὴν εἰρήνην.

Exercise 17.2

1. I hear the voice.
2. I hear the voices.
3. In the land.
4. The words of the letter.
5. The words of the letters.
6. In battles.
7. Towards the village.
8. We have victory.
9. The victory of the village.
10. The shouts of the battle.

Exercise 17.3

1. The messenger brings the letter of the general.
2. The enemy hear the shouts of the allies.
3. The general's slaves stay in the land.
4. The battles prevent peace.
5. The slave leads the horses out of the village towards the

§18 'To be'

In Greek as in most other languages, the verb *to be* does not go quite like other verbs. It has a slightly different set of endings. It is what is called an 'irregular verb.' Here it is:

Present Tense – εἰμί

person	number	Greek	English
1st	singular	εἰμί	I am
2nd	singular	εἶ	You (singular) are
3rd	singular	ἐστί (ν)*	He / She/ It is
1st	plural	ἐσμέν	We are
2nd	plural	ἐστέ	You (plural) are
3rd	plural	εἰσί (ν)*	They are

* the **ν** is added at the end of a sentence, or when the next word begins with a vowel.

Look at these examples:

δοῦλός εἰμι. = I am a slave
φίλοι ἐσμέν = We are friends

You will see that the verb *to be* is followed by a noun in the **nominative** (not accusative) case. This is because this verb does not really describe an action taking place on something, just a state of being.

Exercise 18.1

1. σύμμαχοί ἐσμεν.
2. φίλος εἰμί.
3. πολέμιοί εἰσιν.
4. διδάσκαλος εἶ.
5. δοῦλοι οὔκ ἐσμεν.
6. στρατηγός ἐστιν.
7. ἄγγελοί ἐστε.
8. οἱ δοῦλοι πολέμιοί εἰσιν.
9. θεός ἐστιν.
10. ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἄγγελός ἐστιν.

Exercise 18.2

1. I am an ally.
2. We are strangers.
3. You (singular) are a god.
4. He is a slave.
5. We are not foreigners.
6. The teacher is an ally.
7. The messenger is a god.
8. They are foreigners.
9. The teachers are allies.
10. You (plural) are friends.

§19 Feminine Nouns in -α

There is another declension of feminine nouns which end in -εα, -ια or -ρα. Their endings are like those of θεά, given below.

ἡ θεά - the goddess

case		singular	plural
nominative	*subject*	ἡ θεά	αἱ θεαί
accusative	*object*	τὴν θεάν	τὰς θεάς
genitive	*'of'*	τῆς θεᾶς	τῶν θεῶν
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῇ θεᾷ	ταῖς θεαῖς

If you look at these endings you will see that in the singular the η of νίκη-type nouns has changed into α, but that the plurals are exactly the same.

Note that the genitive singular appears to be the same as the accusative plural. Be careful not to confuse them – the word for *the* will be the giveaway in most contexts.

Vocabulary 11	
ἡ θεά	goddess
ἡ ἀγορά	market place
αἱ Ἀθῆναι	Athens (plural)
ἡ ναυμαχία	sea battle
ἡ οἰκία	house
ἡ σοφία	wisdom
ἡ στρατιά	army
ἡ χώρα	country

Exercise 19.1

1. θύομεν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ταῖς θεαῖς ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις.
2. ἐν τῇ τῆς θεᾶς οἰκίᾳ ἐσμέν.
3. ἡ στρατιὰ στρατεύει εἰς τὴν χώραν.
4. οἱ δοῦλοι ἐκ τῆς χώρας φεύγουσιν.
5. οἱ πολέμιοι στρατιὰν ἔχουσιν.

Exercise 19.2

1. The voice of the goddess.
2. The wisdom of the army.
3. In the house.
4. Into the country.
5. Out of the country.
6. In the sea battle.
7. The goddess has wisdom.
8. In the market place.
9. He has houses.
10. I trust the goddess.

Exercise 19.3

1. ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἐστε.
2. πιστεύομεν τῇ θεᾷ.
3. ἡ νίκη τὴν εἰρήνην παρέχει.
4. τοὺς ἵππους ἀποκτείνομεν.
5. ἡ θεὰ ἔχει τὴν σοφίαν.
6. ὁ διδάσκαλος διδάσκει ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
7. ὁ δοῦλος καὶ ὁ ἄγγελος μένουσιν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.
8. ἡ θεὰ ἐπιστολὴν πέμπει.
9. ἔστι* κίνδυνος ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
10. οἱ δοῦλοι τρέχουσιν ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας.

*ἔστι at the beginning of a sentence can mean *there is.*

Exercise 19.4

1. The wisdom of the goddess persuades the army.
2. The goddess hears the shouts of the army.
3. The general leads the army into the sea battle.
4. The slaves sacrifice to the gods and goddesses in the
5. The sea battle brings victory.

§20 Revision

There is no new grammar in this section, which provides further practice with what has been covered already. There are however five little new words to note:

Vocabulary 12	
ἀεί	always
ἀλλά	but
εὖ	well
νῦν	now
πολλάκις	often

Exercise 20.1

1. οἱ τῶν θεῶν λόγοι τοὺς δούλους ἀεὶ πείθουσιν.
2. τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ταῖς θεαῖς πολλάκις θύομεν.
3. ὁ δοῦλος νῦν γράφει ἐπιστολὴν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.
4. ἀκούομεν τοὺς τοῦ θεοῦ λόγους, ἀλλ᾽ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ
5. τῷ στρατηγῷ πιστεύομεν, ἀλλὰ τῷ δούλῳ οὐ
6. ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐπιστολὰς εὖ γράφει.
7. οἱ δοῦλοι ἐπιστολὰς φέρουσιν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν πολλάκις.
8. ὁ στρατηγὸς τὴν στρατιὰν εἰς τὴν χώραν νῦν ἄγει.
9. ὁ διδάσκαλος ἀεὶ εὖ διδάσκει τοὺς δούλους.
10. τοὺς τῆς θεᾶς λόγους ἀεὶ ἀκούομεν.

Exercise 20.2

1. He always writes well.
2. We often kill foreigners.
3. I trust the goddess, but I do not trust the god.
4. The army is marching towards Athens now.
5. The girl friend often writes letters.

Exercise 20.3

1. The enemy often harm slaves.
2. He is always running in the market place.
3. We are friends and allies.
4. The messenger is now teaching the slave.
5. The battle prevents peace.

§21 Neuter nouns in -ον

We have met masculine nouns (like ὁ λόγος) and feminine nouns (like ἡ νίκη or ἡ θεά) in Greek. There is a third gender, called *neuter*, which means 'neither'. The forms of these kinds of neuter nouns are given below, as well as the new, neuter words for *the*.

τὸ δῶρον - the gift

case		singular	plural
nominative	*subject*	τὸ δῶρον	τὰ δῶρα
accusative	*object*	τὸ δῶρον	τὰ δῶρα
genitive	*'of'*	τοῦ δώρου	τῶν δώρων
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῷ δώρῳ	τοῖς δώροις

Vocabulary 13	
τὸ δῶρον	gift
τὸ ἆθλον	prize
τὸ δεῖπνον	dinner, meal
τὸ δένδρον	tree
τὸ ζῷον	animal
τὸ πλοῖον	boat
τὸ στρατόπεδον	camp
τὸ τόξον	bow
τὰ ὅπλα (plural)	arms, weapons

Beware!: Strange neuter plural subject rule
In Greek, when the subject (doer) of a sentence is in the neuter plural, the verb for some reason stays in the singular. In other words the verb must have the *he/she/it* ending, not the *they* ending which you would expect.

Example:
The bows harm the men = τὰ τόξα βλάπτει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.
neuter PLURAL subject + SINGULAR verb

Exercise 21.1

1. τὰ δένδρα τὴν οἰκίαν φυλάσσει
2. τὰ πλοῖα τὸν στρατὸν φέρει.
3. ὁ ξένος δῶρα καὶ ἆθλα ἔχει.
4. ὁ στρατηγὸς πέμπει τὰ ὅπλα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου.
5. ὁ στρατὸς ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ μένει.

Exercise 21.2

1. I have the prize.
2. The boats guard the river.
3. You (plural) bring gifts.
4. We are running in the camp.
5. The animals stay.
6. We trust animals.
7. The general provides weapons for his (=the) slaves.
8. The animals chase the messenger.
9. He does not have dinner.
10. The bows of the enemy harm the trees.

Exercise 21.3

1. οἱ πολέμιοι τόξα ἔχουσιν.
2. τὰ ζῷα διώκει τοὺς δούλους.
3. τὸ πλοῖον βαίνει πρὸς τὰ δένδρα.
4. οἱ βάρβαροι ὅπλα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου φέρουσιν.
5. οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὰ ἆθλα ἀεὶ διώκουσιν.
6. τὰ δῶρα οὐ βλάπτει τὴν θεάν.
7. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἆθλα καὶ ὅπλα παρέχει τῇ στρατιᾷ.
8. οἱ ἵπποι τρέχουσιν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον.
9. ὁ ἄγγελος ἆθλα ἀγγέλλει τοῖς δούλοις.
10. πρὸς τὸ τῶν βαρβάρων στρατόπεδον τρέχω.

§22 Summary of *the;* τε… καί…

Here is a summary of all the forms of the word for *the*. The word *the* is, among grammarians (people who study grammar), called *the definite article.*

(In case you were wondering, the *indefinite article* is *a* or *an*. There is no word in Greek for *a* or *an*.)

The definite article - *the*

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	ὁ	ἡ	τό
	accusative	τόν	τήν	τό
	genitive	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
	dative	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
Plural	nominative	οἱ	αἱ	τά
	accusative	τούς	τάς	τά
	genitive	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
	dative	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς

τε... καί...

These two little words between them mean *both..... and.....*
The τε is always the second word in its phrase.
Study these examples:

ὅ **τε** δοῦλος **καὶ** ὁ διδάσκαλος βάρβαροί εἰσιν.
Both the slave **and** the teacher are foreigners.

ὁ διδάσκαλος δοῦλός **τε καὶ** φίλος ἐστίν.
The teacher is **both** a slave **and** a friend.

Exercise 22.1

1. ὅ τε ξένος καὶ ὁ ἄγγελος σύμμαχοί εἰσιν.
2. ἀποκτείνομεν τούς τε δούλους καὶ τοὺς ξένους.
3. ὁ δοῦλος γράφει τε καὶ διδάσκει.
4. διδάσκω τε καὶ γράφω.
5. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀποκτείνει τούς τε πολεμίους καὶ τούς βαρβάρους.
6. τό τε πλοῖον καὶ τὸ τόξον δῶρά ἐστιν.
7. οἵ τε δοῦλοι καὶ οἱ ἄγγελοι τρέχουσιν.
8. ὁ ἄνθρωπος δοῦλός τε καὶ διδάσκαλός ἐστιν.
9. ἀεὶ θύομεν τοῖς τε θεοῖς καὶ ταῖς θεαῖς.
10. οἱ δοῦλοι δῶρα τε καὶ ἆθλα φέρουσιν.

Exercise 22.2

1. I am both a slave and a teacher.
2. Both the gods and the goddesses are fleeing.
3. Both the general and the slave are writing.
4. The general is killing both the slaves and the horses.
5. The slave is both teaching and training.

Exercise 22.3

1. We are both running and chasing.
2. They are both foreigners and enemies.
3. Both the slaves and the horses are marching.
4. He is both a brother and a friend.
5. The general is drawing up both the horses and the slaves.

§23 Sentence Connection

Greek is fond of linking sentences together with little words called *particles.* Often these little *particles* will tell you something about the relationship the current sentence has with the previous one.

Exercise 23.1

ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος στρατηγός ἐστι καὶ στρατιὰν ἔχει. ἐν δὲ τῇ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατιᾷ εἰσιν σύμμαχοί τε καὶ φίλοι. ὁ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος τοὺς πολεμίους οὐ φιλεῖ. οἱ γὰρ πολέμιοι βάρβαροί εἰσιν. ὁ οὖν Ἀλέξανδρος τὴν στρατιὰν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τάσσει καὶ ὅπλα τε καὶ ἵππους παρέχει. ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ ἀκούει τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ τοῖς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγοις πιστεύει. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἄγει τὴν στρατιὰν ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.

ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος = Alexander
δέ = and, but

φιλεῖ = (he) likes
γάρ = for
οὖν = therefore

ἀκούω is followed by the genitive of the person heard (but the accusative of the thing heard)

ἔπειτα = then, next

Vocabulary 14	
δέ (2nd word in sentence)	and, but
γάρ (2nd word in sentence)	for *(explains something mentioned in the previous sentence)*
οὖν (2nd word in sentence)	therefore *(leads on from something mentioned in the previous sentence)*
ἔπειτα	then, next
τε… καί…	both… and…

§24 Summary of Nouns

Nouns are divided into groups called *declensions.* The endings of the nouns in each declension have similarities. Study again the endings of the nouns you have met so far - these are tabulated below.

First declension nouns

			ἡ νίκη (victory)	ἡ θεά (goddess)
Singular	nominative	*subject*	ἡ νίκη	ἡ θεά
	accusative	*object*	τὴν νίκην	τὴν θεάν
	genitive	*'of'*	τῆς νίκης	τῆς θεᾶς
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῇ νίκῃ	τῇ θεᾷ
Plural	nominative	*subject*	αἱ νῖκαι	αἱ θεαί
	accusative	*object*	τὰς νίκας	τὰς θεάς
	genitive	*'of'*	τῶν νικῶν	τῶν θεῶν
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	ταῖς νίκαις	ταῖς θεαῖς

Second declension nouns

			ὁ λόγος (word)	τὸ δῶρον (gift)
Singular	nominative	*subject*	ὁ λόγος	τὸ δῶρον
	accusative	*object*	τὸν λόγον	τὸ δῶρον
	genitive	*'of'*	τοῦ λόγου	τοὐ δώρου
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῷ λόγῳ	τῷ δώρῳ
Plural	nominative	*subject*	οἱ λόγοι	τὰ δῶρα
	accusative	*object*	τοὺς λόγους	τὰ δῶρα
	genitive	*'of'*	τῶν λόγων	τῶν δώρων
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τοῖς λόγοις	τοῖς δώροις

Exercise 24.1

1. The brother has a gift.
2. The goddess chases the prizes.
3. We hear the shouts of the enemy.
4. The allies trust the goddess.
5. The boats are staying on the river.

Exercise 24.2

1. ὁ διδάσκαλος ἀεὶ εὖ διδάσκει.
2. οἱ δοῦλοι μένουσιν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
3. τοὺς τῶν θεῶν λόγους ἀκούομεν.
4. ὁ ἄνθρωπος διώκει τὸ ζῷον εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
5. οἱ σύμμαχοι βοὰς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀκούουσιν.
6. ὁ δοῦλος τρέχει ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον.
7. οὐκ ἐν κινδύνῳ ἐσμέν.
8. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐπιστολὰς πολλάκις γράφει.
9. οἱ πολέμιοι ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας φεύγουσιν.
10. αἱ μάχαι τὴν εἰρήνην οὐκ ἀεὶ παρέχουσιν.

Vocabulary 15	
like λόγος:	
ὁ ἔνοικος	inhabitant
ὁ μῦθος	story
ὁ νεκρός	corpse
ὁ νόμος	law, custom
ὁ φόβος	fear
ὁ χρυσός	gold
like νίκη:	
ἡ πύλη	gate
ἡ σιγή	silence
ἡ ὕλη	wood, forest
like θεά:	
ἡ βία	force, strength
ἡ θύρα	door

Exercise 24.3

1. οἱ δοῦλοι φεύγουσιν ἐκ τῶν πύλων εἰς τὴν ὕλην.
2. οἱ ἔνοικοι φυλάσσουσι τὰς τῶν οἰκίων θύρας.
3. ἀεὶ ἀκούομεν τοὺς τῶν ἐνοίκων μύθους.
4. ὁ στρατηγὸς παρέχει χρυσὸν καὶ δῶρα τοῖς ἐνοίκοις.
5. οἱ τῶν θεῶν νόμοι κωλύουσι τοὺς ἐνοίκους.

Exercise 24.4

1. The slaves are bringing the corpses out of the camp silently (=by silence).
2. Fear prevents the army's general.
3. The Athenians are preventing the foreigners by force.
4. The god provides gold for the inhabitants.
5. The customs of the inhabitants prevent the men.

§25 Adjectives like σοφός

Study the following table of the adjective σοφός, *wise.* You will see that:

- the masculine endings are the same as those of λόγος.
- the feminine endings are the same as those of νίκη.
- the neuter endings are the same as those of δῶρον.

σοφός - **wise**

			masculine	**feminine**	**neuter**
Singular	nominative	*subject*	σοφός	σοφή	σοφόν
	accusative	*object*	σοφόν	σοφήν	σοφόν
	genitive	*'of'*	σοφοῦ	σοφῆς	σοφοῦ
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	σοφῷ	σοφῇ	σοφῷ
Plural	nominative	*subject*	σοφοί	σοφαί	σοφά
	accusative	*object*	σοφούς	σοφάς	σοφά
	genitive	*'of'*	σοφῶν	σοφῶν	σοφῶν
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	σοφοῖς	σοφαῖς	σοφοῖς

An adjective has to 'agree' with the noun it is describing. It must have the same gender (masculine/feminine/neuter) case (nominative, accusative etc) and number (singular/plural).

Examples:

ὁ σοφὸς δοῦλος.	=	The wise slave.
οἱ σοφοὶ δοῦλοι.	=	The wise slaves.
ἡ σοφὴ θεά.	=	The wise goddess.
αἱ σοφαὶ θεαί.	=	The wise goddesses.
ἡ θεὰ σοφή ἐστιν	=	The goddess is wise.
αἱ θεαὶ σοφαί εἰσιν.	=	The goddesses are wise.

Vocabulary 15	
σοφός	wise
ἀγαθός	good
δεινός	strange, terrible
κακός	bad, evil, wicked
καλός	fine, beautiful
χαλεπός	difficult, dangerous
χρήσιμος	useful

Exercise 25.1

1. ἡ καλὴ κώμη.
2. οἱ σοφοὶ διδάσκαλοι.
3. ὁ κακὸς ἄνθρωπος.
4. ὁ ἀγαθὸς δοῦλος.
5. οἱ χαλεποὶ ποταμοί.
6. τὸ ζῷον δεινόν.
7. τὰ χρήσιμα ὅπλα.
8. οἱ σοφοὶ ἔνοικοι.
9. ἡ σοφὴ θεά.
10. αἱ χαλεπαὶ ναυμαχίαι.

Exercise 25.2

1. οἱ ἔνοικοι καλὰ πλοῖα ἔχουσιν.
2. πολλάκις ἀκούομεν τοὺς τοῦ διδασκάλου μύθους.
3. λαμβάνομεν τοὺς δούλους βίᾳ.
4. ὁ φόβος κωλύει τοὺς δούλους.
5. οἱ ἔνοικοι τρέχουσιν ἐκ τῆς ὕλης εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν.

Exercise 25.3

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς σοφός ἐστιν.
2. ἡ νίκη ἐστὶ καλή.
3. ὁ ποταμὸς χαλεπὸς οὐκ ἔστιν.
4. ἡ θεὰ καλὰ δῶρα ἔχει.
5. τὰ ζῷα δεινά ἐστιν.
6. ἀγαθὸν διδάσκαλον ἔχομεν.
7. οἱ τοῦ διδασκάλου λόγοι σοφοί εἰσιν.
8. ὁ στρατηγὸς καλοὺς ἵππους ἔχει.
9. ὁ ἄγγελος ἀγγέλλει τοὺς δεινοὺς λόγους ἐν τῇ καλῇ ἀγορᾷ.
10. οἱ κακοὶ δοῦλοι ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τρέχουσιν.

Exercise 25.4

1. οἱ σοφοὶ ἔνοικοι τοῖς κακοῖς δούλοις οὐ πιστεύουσιν.
2. τὰ δεινὰ ζῷα τρέχει εἰς τὴν ὕλην.
3. τοῖς τῆς θεᾶς σοφοῖς λόγοις ἀεὶ πιστεύομεν.
4. ὁ σοφὸς διδάσκαλος καλὴν ἐπιστολὴν γράφει.
5. οἱ κακοὶ βάρβαροι εἰς τὴν κώμην τρέχουσι καὶ τοὺς σοφοὺς διδασκάλους ἀποκτείνουσιν.

Exercise 25.5

1. The goddess is wise.
2. The teachers are good.
3. We have a good meal.
4. The forest is dangerous.
5. The beautiful goddess listens.
6. The tree is beautiful.
7. The messengers announce fine words.
8. The slave brings a useful gift.
9. Wars are not good.
10. The house has a beautiful door.

§26 Adjectives like φίλιος

Study the following table of the adjective φίλιος, *friendly.* It is very similar to the table of σοφός except in the feminine singular. You will see that:

- the masculine endings are the still same as those of λόγος.
- the feminine endings are now the same as those of θεά.
- the neuter endings are still the same as those of δῶρον.

φίλιος - friendly

			masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	*subject*	φίλιος	φιλία	φίλιον
	accusative	*object*	φίλιον	φιλίαν	φίλιον
	genitive	*'of'*	φιλίου	φιλίας	φιλίου
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	φιλίῳ	φιλίᾳ	φιλίῳ
Plural	nominative	*subject*	φίλιοι	φίλιαι	φίλια
	accusative	*object*	φιλίους	φιλίας	φίλια
	genitive	*'of'*	φιλίων	φιλίων	φιλίων
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	φιλίοις	φιλίαις	φιλίοις

Vocabulary 17	
φίλιος	friendly
ἀνδρεῖος	brave
ἐχθρός	hostile
μακρός	long
μικρός	small
νέος	new

Exercise 26.1

1. ἡ φιλία θεά.
2. οἱ ἐχθροὶ πολέμιοι.
3. τὰ νέα ὅπλα.
4. ὁ μακρὸς ποταμός.
5. οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι στρατηγοί.
6. ἡ μικρὰ φωνή.
7. τὸ νέον στρατόπεδον.
8. οἱ μακροὶ λόγοι.
9. ἡ ἐχθρὰ θεά.
10. ἡ ἀνδρεία στρατιά.

Exercise 26.2

1. A new bow.
2. Brave slaves.
3. The small battle.
4. A long letter.
5. Friendly inhabitants.
6. Hostile animals.
7. A long sea-battle.
8. The new market-place.
9. Small trees.
10. A fine victory.

Exercise 26.3

1. οἱ δοῦλοι νέα ὅπλα καὶ χρήσιμα ἔχουσιν.
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἐνοίκους ἀποκτείνει.
3. οἱ τοῦ διδασκάλου λόγοι φίλιοί εἰσιν.
4. τὰ ζῷα εἰς τὸν μακρὸν ποταμὸν πολλάκις τρέχει.
5. ὁ ἵππος μικρός τε καὶ φίλιός ἐστιν.

§27 The Imperfect Tense

This is the *was/were...ing* or *used to* tense.

Examples:
I was running.
We were laughing.
They used to walk.

In Greek it is made up of three parts:

1. An epsilon, ἐ-, stuck on the front. This is called an *augment* and is a sign of the past in Greek.
2. The verb stem. For example, -παυ-.
3. The personal endings -ον, -ες, -ε(ν), -ομεν, -ετε, -ον

Imperfect Tense

person	number	Greek	English
1st	singular	ἔπαυον	I was stopping
2nd	singular	ἔπαυες	You were stopping *(singular)*
3rd	singular	ἔπαυε(ν)*	He *or* she *or* it was stopping
1st	plural	ἐπαύομεν	We were stopping
2nd	plural	ἐπαύετε	You were stopping *(plural)*
3rd	plural	ἔπαυον	They were stopping

* the **ν** is added at the end of a sentence, or when the next word begins with a vowel.

Vocabulary 18	
θαυμάζω	I am amazed at, admire
κελεύω	I order
κρύπτω	I hide
λέγω	I speak, say
λύω	I release
μανθάνω	I learn

Exercise 27.1

1. We were taking.
2. They were hiding.
3. You (singular) were stopping.
4. They were sacrificing.
5. I was teaching.
6. We were marching.
7. He was speaking.
8. He was going.
9. You (plural) were persuading.
10. They were guarding.

Exercise 27.2

1. We were learning.
2. You (plural) were writing.
3. They were bringing.
4. I was ordering.
5. He was arranging.
6. They were chasing.
7. You (singular) used to trust.
8. He was fleeing.
9. We were running.
10. You (singular) were amazed at.

Exercise 27.3

1. ἐλύομεν.
2. ἔπειθες.
3. ἐπιστεύομεν.
4. ἔβλαπτον.
5. ἐφεύγετε.
6. ἐμάνθανεν.
7. ἐστρατεύετε.
8. ἔθυον.
9. ἐκελεύομεν.
10. ἔπεμπες.

Exercise 27.4

1. ἐκώλυεν.
2. ἔφερον.
3. ἔλεγον.
4. ἔτασσεν.
5. ἐπαιδεύομεν.
6. ἔκρυπτες.
7. ἐπιστεύομεν.
8. ἔμενον.
9. ἐθαυμάζετε.
10. ἔσῳζες.

Exercise 27.5

1. οἱ δοῦλοι πολλάκις ἔθυον ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
2. τὴν τῆς θεᾶς σοφίαν ἐθαυμάζομεν.
3. ὁ διδάσκαλος τοὺς δούλους εὖ ἐδίδασκεν.
4. οἱ ἄγγελοι ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔθυον.
5. ἐδιώκομεν τὰ ζῷα εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
6. ἡ στρατιὰ ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου εἰς τὴν ὕλην ἐστράτευεν.
7. ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς συμμάχους ἔτασσεν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ.
8. τοῖς τῶν βαρβάρων λόγοις οὐκ ἐπιστεύομεν.
9. οἱ δοῦλοι ἔτρεχον εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
10. καλὰ δῶρα τῷ ἀγαθῷ διδασκάλῳ ἔφερον.

Exercise 27.6

1. The wise general did not trust the slaves.
2. The teacher often used to write letters in the village.
3. The hostile foreigners were marching towards the camp.
4. The slaves were hiding their (= the) weapons in the trees.
5. We do not listen to the long stories of the teacher.

Exercise 27.7

1. We often used to learn new words in the market-place.
2. The teacher was providing beautiful gifts for his (= the) friends.
3. I did not trust the wicked words of the general.
4. The beautiful animals were running away from the river.
5. The friendly slave was writing a long letter in the house.

§28 Nouns like κριτής and νεανίας

Here are two more first declension masculine noun types. Nouns ending in -ης (like κριτής, *judge*) usually indicate someone's job or profession. The νεανίας, *young man* table is a bit of a one-off, and you will not meet many nouns that go like this.

			ὁ κριτής **judge**	ὁ νεανίας **young man**
Singular	nominative	*subject*	ὁ κριτής	ὁ νεανίας
	accusative	*object*	τὸν κριτήν	τὸν νεανίαν
	genitive	*'of'*	τοῦ κριτοῦ	τοῦ νεανίου
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῷ κριτῇ	τῷ νεανίᾳ
Plural	nominative	*subject*	οἱ κριταί	οἱ νεανίαι
	accusative	*object*	τοὺς κριτάς	τοὺς νεανίας
	genitive	*'of'*	τῶν κριτῶν	τῶν νεανιῶν
	dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τοῖς κριταῖς	τοῖς νεανίαις

Vocabulary 19	
ὁ κριτής	judge
ὁ δεσπότης	master
ὁ ναύτης	sailor
ὁ νεανίας	young man
ὁ πολίτης	citizen
ὁ ποιητής	poet
ὁ στρατιώτης	soldier

Exercise 28.1

1. The citizens are marching.
2. I teach the poet.
3. The sailor was fleeing.
4. He was sending soldiers.
5. The shouts of the citizens.
6. The master is friendly.
7. The slaves of the master.
8. The young men are running.
9. They were chasing the citizens.
10. We trust the judge.

Exercise 28.2

1. The master of the slaves is wicked.
2. The soldiers were chasing the sailors.
3. Young men do not trust judges.
4. The teacher was teaching the poet.
5. The citizens were amazed at the soldiers.

Exercise 28.3

1. ἀκούομεν τὰς τῶν πολιτῶν βοάς.
2. οἱ φίλιοι δοῦλοι ἐχθρὸν δεσπότην ἔχουσιν.
3. οἱ στρατιῶται τὰ ζῷα εἰς τὴν μικρὰν ἀγορὰν ἐδίωκον.
4. ὁ στρατιώτης φίλιός τε καὶ ἀνδρεῖός ἐστιν.
5. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἄγει τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου.
6. οἱ νεανίαι τὴν τοῦ κριτοῦ σοφίαν ἐθαύμαζον.
7. ὁ κακὸς δεσπότης ἐδίωκε τοὺς δούλους ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας.
8. οἱ τοῦ στρατοῦ στρατιῶται ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἔμενον.
9. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐκ τῆς μάχης εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔφευγον.
10. οἱ ἀγαθοὶ δοῦλοι οὐκ ἀκούουσι τοὺς τοῦ κακοῦ δεσπότου σοφοὺς λόγους.

§29 The Aorist Tense

This is a very common tense in Greek. It indicates a single, completed action in the past.

In English these actions often (but not always!) end in *-ed.*

Examples:
I carried.
We walked.
They fought. (**not** *They fighted*!)
You saw. (**not** *You seed*!)

In Greek it is made up of three parts:

1. An epsilon, ἐ-, stuck on the front. This, you may remember from the imperfect tense, is called an *augment* and is a sign of the past in Greek.
2. The verb stem. For example, -παυ-.
3. The personal endings -σα, -σας, -σε(ν), -σαμεν, -σατε, -σαν.

Aorist Tense

person	number	Greek	English
1st	singular	ἔπαυσα	I stopped
2nd	singular	ἔπαυσας	You stopped *(singular)*
3rd	singular	ἔπαυσε(ν)*	He *or* she *or* it stopped
1st	plural	ἐπαύσαμεν	We stopped
2nd	plural	ἐπαύσατε	You stopped *(plural)*
3rd	plural	ἔπαυσαν	They stopped

* the ν is added at the end of a sentence, or when the next word begins with a vowel.

The sigma (-σ-) inserted just before the ending, as well as the augment at the front, are useful signposts to identify the aorist.

Eight tricky aorists

The sigma (-σ-) inserted just before the aorist's personal endings sometimes leads to a slight alteration in the spelling of the Greek. Here are some examples:

Verb	English	Aorist	English
γράφω	I write	ἔγραψα	I wrote
διώκω	I chase	ἐδίωξα	I chased
πέμπω	I send	ἔπεμψα	I sent
φυλάσσω	I guard	ἐφύλαξα	I guarded
διδάσκω	I teach	ἐδίδαξα	I taught
λέγω	I speak	ἔλεξα	I spoke
πείθω	I persuade	ἔπεισα	I persuaded
ἀκούω	I hear	ἤκουσα*	I heard

* As you can see, the ἀ- at the beginning of ἀκούω has changed its augment to ἠ- here (instead of the more usual ἐ-). In other words, the initial vowel is lengthened to indicate the augment. We will be coming across more examples of this – as well as some irregular aorists – later.

Exercise 29.1

1. We sacrificed.
2. He sent.
3. You (singular) heard.
4. He trained.
5. I spoke
6. They prevented.
7. You (plural) guarded.
8. They ordered.
9. We chased.
10. He marched.

Exercise 29.2

1. We sent.
2. They marched.
3. You (singular) trusted.
4. They guarded.
5. He persuaded.
6. You (plural) stopped.
7. We released.
8. They taught.
9. He spoke.
10. He ordered.

Exercise 29.3

1. οἱ δοῦλοι ἔλυσαν τοὺς ἵππους.
2. ὁ δεσπότης ἐδίωξε τὸν δοῦλον.
3. μακρὰν ἐπιστολὴν ἔγραψας.
4. ὁ διδάσκαλος τοὺς δούλους εὖ ἐδίδαξεν.
5. τὰ ζῷα ἐπαιδεύσαμεν.
6. οἱ πολῖται ἔθυσαν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
7. ὁ ποταμὸς ἐκώλυσε τοὺς στρατιώτας.
8. τὴν θεὰν ἐπείσατε.
9. ὁ διδάσκαλος σοφοὺς λόγους ἔλεξεν.
10. οἱ κριταὶ τοὺς πολίτας ἔπεισαν.

Exercise 29.4

1. ὁ σοφὸς διδάσκαλος τοὺς πολίτας εὖ ἐδίδαξεν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
2. οἱ πολέμιοι μακρὰν ἐπιστολὴν πρὸς τὸν τῶν στρατιωτῶν στρατηγὸν ἔπεμψαν.
3. ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ὁ στρατηγὸς σοφοὺς λόγους ἔλεξε τοῖς συμμάχοις.
4. τὰ ζῷα τοὺς νεανίας ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐδίωκεν.
5. οἱ δοῦλοι ἀεὶ ἀκούουσι τοὺς τῶν δεσποτῶν λόγους.

Exercise 29.5

1. The new trees prevented the young men.
2. The enemy marched into the camp of the slaves.
3. The teachers were teaching and the slaves were
4. The soldiers did not hear the general's words in the
5. Good generals do not often kill messengers.

§30 The Imperfect of *to be*; θάλασσα.

We have already met the present tense of *to be* in Greek. Here is the imperfect tense, which is very common.

Imperfect Tense – εἰμί

person	number	Greek	English
1st	singular	ἦν or ἦ	I was
2nd	singular	ἦσθα	You (singular) were
3rd	singular	ἦν	He / She/ It was
1st	plural	ἦμεν	We were
2nd	plural	ἦτε	You (plural) were
3rd	plural	ἦσαν	They were

Examples:

δοῦλος ἦν. = I was a slave.

ὁ δεσπότης κακὸς ἦν. = The master was bad.

Reminder

The verb *to be* is followed by nouns/adjectives in the nominative, **not** the accusative. This is because the verb *to be* is not really an action.

Here is a common noun which, like νεανίας *young man*, belongs to an uncommon declension:

ἡ θάλασσα - the sea

case		Singular	Plural
nominative	*subject*	ἡ θάλασσα	αἱ θάλασσαι
accusative	*object*	τὴν θάλασσαν	τὰς θαλάσσας
genitive	*'of'*	τῆς θαλάσσης	τῶν θαλασσῶν
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῇ θαλάσσῃ	ταῖς θαλάσσαις

Vocabulary 20	
ἡ θάλασσα	sea

Exercise 30.1

1. ἡ θάλασσα ἐχθρὰ ἦν.
2. ἐν κινδύνῳ ἦμεν.
3. οἱ δοῦλοι ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν.
4. ἀνδρεῖος στρατηγὸς ἦσθα.
5. ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ ἦμεν.
6. οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνδρεῖοι ἦσαν.
7. τὰ πλοῖα ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ ἦν.
8. τὰ τόξα νεά ἐστιν.
9. ὁ κριτὴς σοφὸς ἦν.
10. τὰ τῶν πολεμίων πλοῖα μικρὰ ἦν.

Exercise 30.2

1. The house was new.
2. The inhabitants of the village were hostile.
3. The stories of the teacher were always long.
4. The bad young men were running out of the woods.
5. The laws of the Athenians were wise.

§31 Some light revision

Exercise 31.1

1. I send a letter.
2. He sent letters.
3. The master is wicked.
4. The masters were wicked.
5. The general's army.
6. The soldiers' bows.
7. The shouts of the animals.
8. The trees were beautiful.
9. We were guarding the horses.
10. He chased the enemy.

Exercise 31.2

1. We sacrificed.
2. They chased.
3. I heard.
4. You (singular) were amazed. *(Use the imperfect tense)*
5. They speak.
6. They learn.
7. He sent.
8. We stay.
9. They were marching.
10. We were.

Exercise 31.3

1. Towards the rivers.
2. In the boat.
3. Out of the tree.
4. In danger.
5. Away from the river.
6. Into the wood.
7. In the battle.
8. Into the house.
9. Away from the camp.
10. In letters.

§32 Open Questions

Open Questions in English

An open question is a question which expects the answer *yes* or *no*. For example: *Is the poet writing a letter?*

Were they running?

In English, to change a statement into an open question two things are usually done:

1. The word order is changed.
2. A question mark is added at the end.

Examples:

Statement	Open Question
The soldiers are fighting.	Are the soldiers fighting?
The slave was running.	Was the slave running?

Open Questions in Greek

To change a Greek statement into an open question you do two things:

1. Add an ἆρα (ἆρ᾽ before a vowel) to the front of the sentence.
2. Add a Greek question mark (; - the same as an English semi-colon) to the end.

Examples:

Statement	Open Question
γράφει ἐπιστολήν.	ἆρα γράφει ἐπιστολήν;
He is writing a letter.	Is he writing a letter?
οἱ δοῦλοι ἔτρεχον.	ἆρ᾽οἱ δοῦλοι ἔτρεχον;
The slaves were running.	Were the slaves running?

Vocabulary 21	
ἆρα… ;	? (open question)
εὑρίσκω	I find
λείπω	I leave
ἡ ἐκκλησία	assembly
ἡ ἡμέρα	day
τὸ ἔργον	work, deed
τὸ ἱερόν	temple

Exercise 32.1

1. οἱ δοῦλοι ἀγαθοί εἰσιν.
2. ἆρ᾽οἱ δοῦλοι ἀγαθοί εἰσιν;
3. τὰ ζῷα ἔτρεχεν.
4. ἆρα τὰ ζῷα ἔτρεχεν;
5. πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐστρατεύομεν.
6. ἆρα πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐστρατεύομεν;
7. τὸ δῶρον καλὸν ἦν.
8. ἆρα τὸ δῶρον καλὸν ἦν;
9. ὁ διδάσκαλος τοὺς νεανίας εὖ διδάσκει.
10. ἆρ᾽ ὁ διδάσκαλος τοὺς νεανίας εὖ διδάσκει;

Exercise 32.2

1. Are you (singular) listening?
2. Did you (singular) send the letter?
3. Did you (plural) hear the shouts?
4. Were the animals running?
5. Are the weapons new?
6. Are we leaving the camp?
7. Is the teacher wise?
8. Was he chasing the slave?
9. Were the slaves fleeing?
10. Are rivers dangerous?

Exercise 32.3

1. ἆρ᾽ ὁ πολίτης ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ εὖ ἔλεγεν;
2. ἆρα τὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔργα θαυμάζεις;
3. ὁ δοῦλος ὅπλα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ εὑρίσκει.
4. ἆρα τόξα φέρομεν εἰς τὸ ἱερόν;
5. οἱ ἀγαθοὶ στρατηγοὶ οὐ λείπουσι τοὺς συμμάχους ἐν κινδύνῳ.
6. ἆρα τὸ τῶν θεῶν ἱερὸν καλὸν ἦν;
7. σοφοὺς λόγους ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἀεὶ λέγω.
8. ἆρ᾽ οἱ δοῦλοι τοῖς θεοῖς ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἔθυον;
9. ἆρ᾽ ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ πολλάκις θύει;
10. ἆρ᾽ αἱ ἡμέραι μακραὶ ἦσαν;

Exercise 32.4

1. They carry the weapons out of the temple.
2. We were amazed at the temples of the gods.
3. The general and the soldiers were leaving the camp.
4. Were the words of the general wise?
5. The teacher always used to speak well in the assembly.

§33 Infinitives

Infinitives are ***to*-words**. For example, *to run, to send, to play*.

To form an infinitive in Greek, you take the verb stem and add -ειν.

Examples:
παύειν = to stop
γράφειν = to write

You will find infinitives in these sorts of sentences:

1. After the verbs κελεύω (I order) and πείθω (I persuade).
   Example:
   ἐκέλευσε τὸν δοῦλον γράφειν τὴν ἐπιστολήν.
   *He ordered the slave **to** write the letter.*

   Note: when ordering/persuading someone not to do something, the word for *not* is μή.

   Example:
   ἐκέλευσε τὸν δοῦλον μὴ γράφειν τὴν ἐπιστολήν.
   *He ordered the slave **not to write** the letter.*

2. After the verb ἐθέλω (I want).
   Example:
   ἐθέλει γράφειν ἐπιστολήν.
   *He wants **to** write a letter.*

3. After the verb *to be* and a neuter adjective meaning *it*.
   Example:
   χαλεπόν ἐστι διδάσκειν.
   ***It** is difficult **to** teach.*

4. After the verb κωλύω: I prevent someone from doing (= to do) something).
   Example:
   κωλύει τὸν δοῦλον γράφειν.
   He prevents the slave from writing.

Vocabulary 22	
ἐθέλω (imperfect: ἤθελον)	I wish, want
μή	not
εἶναι	to be (infinitive of εἰμί, *I am*)
ῥᾴδιος (like φίλιος)	easy

Exercise 33.1

1. ὁ κριτὴς ἐκέλευσε τοὺς νεανίας μὴ βλάπτειν τὰ καλὰ δένδρα.
2. οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἤθελον μένειν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ.
3. οὐ ῥᾴδιον ἦν λαμβάνειν τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στρατόπεδον.
4. ὁ δεσπότης τὸν δοῦλον ἔπεισε μακρὰν ἐπιστολὴν γράφειν.
5. ὁ δοῦλος ἤθελεν ἐκ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν φεύγειν.
6. ἆρ᾽ ἐθέλεις τὰ ὅπλα ἐκ τοῦ ἱεροῦ φέρειν;
7. οἱ δοῦλοι τοὺς στρατιώτας ἔπεισαν μὴ ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου στρατεύειν.
8. τοὺς δούλους τοῖς θεοῖς θύειν ἐκωλύσαμεν.
9. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκέλευσε τὸν πολίτην εὖ λέγειν ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ.
10. οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἤθελον ἀποκτείνειν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.

Exercise 33.2

1. The young man wants to learn.
2. The slaves wanted to flee.
3. I ordered the slaves to stay.
4. We persuaded the teacher to listen.
5. Do you (singular) want to learn?
6. He orders the soldiers to march.
7. We order the young man to be good.
8. He persuades the slave not to teach.
9. It is not easy to kill.
10. They want to run.

Exercise 33.3

1. We want to take the enemy's weapons.
2. The master ordered the slaves not to harm the horses.
3. It is good to write a long letter.
4. It is not easy to be good.
5. The teacher persuaded the young man to send a beautiful gift.

§34 The Future Tense

The Future Tense

This is easily spotted in English by the words *will* or *shall.*
For example*, I shall run, You will walk, They will laugh.*

In Greek the future tense is easy to form. You add a sigma, -σ-, between the verb stem and the endings of the present tense.

Future Tense

person	number	Greek	English
1st	singular	παύσω	I shall stop
2nd	singular	παύσεις	You will stop *(singular)*
3rd	singular	παύσει	He *or* she *or* it will stop
1st	plural	παύσομεν	We shall stop
2nd	plural	παύσετε	You will stop *(plural)*
3rd	plural	παύσουσι(ν)*	They will stop

* the **ν** is added at the end of a sentence, or when the next word begins with a vowel.

Careful!

The addition of this -σ- will sometimes affect the spelling of a Greek verb. For example, in the case of the verb *I send*, πέμπ-ω the π of the stem combines with the σ to create the sound πσ. But this sound is already represented by the Greek letter psi, ψ, so the Greek for *I shall send* is not written πέμπσω but πέμψω. Here is a list of the tricky futures of the verbs you have already met:

Verb	English	Future	English
πέμπω	I send	πέμψω	I shall send
γράφω	I write	γράψω	I shall write
διώκω	I chase	διώξω	I shall chase
ἄγω	I lead	ἄξω	I shall lead
διδάσκω	I teach	διδάξω	I shall teach
πείθω	I persuade	πείσω	I shall persuade

Exercise 34.1

1. We shall stop.
2. You (singular) will send.
3. They will train.
4. You (plural) will march.
5. We shall sacrifice.
6. I shall trust.
7. They will persuade.
8. We shall lead.
9. I shall order.
10. He will release.

Exercise 34 .2

1. They will march.
2. I shall write.
3. You (singular) will lead.
4. He will worship.
5. We shall send.
6. I shall persuade.
7. They will order.
8. You (plural) will chase.
9. We shall sacrifice.
10. He will teach.

§35 Feminine Nouns in –ος

You are already familiar with the masculine noun ὁ λόγος, *the word.* There is a small group of nouns which have exactly the same endings as λόγος but which are feminine. This means of course that the word for *the* will be in the feminine form with these nouns. Here is an example:

ἡ βίβλος - the book

case		singular		plural	
nominative	*subject*	ἡ	βίβλος	αἱ	βίβλοι
accusative	*object*	τὴν	βίβλον	τὰς	βίβλους
genitive	*'of'*	τῆς	βίβλου	τῶν	βίβλων
dative	*'to'* or *'for'*	τῇ	βίβλῳ	ταῖς	βίβλοις

Vocabulary 23	
ἡ βίβλος	book
ἡ νῆσος	island
ἡ νόσος	disease
ἡ ὁδός	road, journey

Exercise 35.1

1. οἱ νεανίαι οὐ θύουσι τοῖς θεοῖς ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ.
2. ὁ καλὸς ποιητὴς γράψει μακρὰν βίβλον.
3. οἱ δοῦλοι πέμψουσιν ἐπιστολὴν πρὸς τὴν στρατηγόν.
4. αἱ τῆς νήσου ὁδοὶ οὐ μακραί εἰσιν.
5. ἡ νόσος βλάπτει τοὺς νεανίας.
6. οἱ πολῖται διώξουσιν τοὺς δούλους ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου.
7. ὁ διδάσκαλος τοὺς πολίτας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ εὖ διδάξει.
8. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἄξει τοὺς ναύτας πρὸς τὴν ὁδόν.
9. ὁ δεσπότης πείσει τοὺς κακοὺς δούλους μὴ φέρειν τὰ ὅπλα.
10. τὰς βίβλους ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ οὐ πολλάκις εὑρίσκομεν.

Exercise 35.2

1. The slave finds a bow on the road.
2. The animals of the island are beautiful.
3. The disease was harming the citizens of the island.
4. The general will lead both soldiers and slaves out of the
5. Will the good doctor look after the slaves?

§36 Imperatives - giving orders

Imperatives in English

The grammatical term for the form of the verb used to give someone a direct order is an *imperative.* In the following examples the imperatives are underlined:

Speak, boy!
Be quiet, children!
Move your car, mate!

Imperatives in Greek

To form a Greek imperative you add **-ε** to the verb stem if you are giving an order to only one person; you add **-ετε** to the verb stem if you are giving an order to more than one person.

Example:

τρέχω (I run)	Singular imperative:	τρέχε.	Run!
	Plural imperative:	τρέχετε.	Run!

The verb *to be*

As you would expect, the imperatives of the verb *to be* are irregular. They are:

Singular imperative:	ἴσθι.	Be!
Plural imperative:	ἔστε.	Be!

Example: ἀνδρεῖοι ἔστε, ὦ στρατιῶται.
Be brave, soldiers!

Prohibitions

Prohibitions are simply telling someone not to do something (*Don't....!*). To express this in Greek you add a **μή** to the front of the imperative.

Example:

μὴ τρέχε. Don't run!

There are no exclamation marks (!) in Greek. But to indicate the person being ordered the little word ὦ (*oh....*) is used. This is usually best ignored when translating into English.

Examples:

τρέχε, ὦ δοῦλε.	Run, slave!	(singular imperative)
τρέχετε, ὦ δοῦλοι.	Run, slaves!	(plural imperative)

Beware!
When a singular noun in -ος is being ordered it ends in -**ε***.
When a singular noun in -ης is being ordered it ends in -**α***.

***The vocative case**
This form of the noun (i.e. when the noun is being spoken to) is called the vocative case, and is listed in noun tables between the nominative and accusative. Most of the time the vocative form is the same as the nominative form – which is why it hasn't been mentioned before – but there are occasional exceptions. For the sake of completeness the vocative forms will be included in tables from now on.

Vocabulary 24	
ὦ…	oh.... (*but often best ignored*)
μή + imperative	don't....
βάλλω	I throw *[see note below]*
τὸ τέκνον	child
ὁ λίθος	stone
ὁ οἶνος	wine
ὁ σῖτος	food

Note on βάλλω
This verb is used in two ways:
1. to throw something (acc.) at someone (ἐπί + acc.).
2. to hit/throw at/pelt someone (acc.) with something (dat.)

βάλλει λίθους ἐπὶ τὰ ζῷα.	He throws stones at the animals.
βάλλει τὰ ζῷα λίθοις.	He hits the animals with stones.

Exercise 36.1

1. ἴσθι δίκαιος, ὦ κριτά.
2. διώκετε τοὺς δούλους, ὦ στρατιῶται.
3. μὴ τὰ δένδρα βλάπτε, ὦ τέκνον.
4. λύε τοὺς ἵππους, ὦ δέσποτα.
5. εὖ φυλάσσε τὴν οἰκίαν, ὦ δοῦλε.
6. μὴ γράφετε ἐν ταῖς βίβλαις, ὦ τέκνα.
7. μένετε ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ, ὦ ξένοι.
8. φέρετε τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ὦ
9. μὴ φεύγετε ἀπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων, ὦ πολῖται.
10. μὴ βάλλετε τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν, ὦ δοῦλοι.

Exercise 36.2

1. Save the wine, slave!
2. Write a letter, poet!
3. Do not throw stones, Athenians!
4. Send gifts, masters!
5. Trust the judge, citizens!

Exercise 36.3

1. Hide the food, doctor!
2. Don't harm the young man, judge!
3. Guard the camp well, soldiers!
4. Send boats, general!
5. Listen to the teacher's words, children!

§37 The possessive dative

There are two ways of expressing possession in Greek.

1. Using the verb ἔχω, *I have.* (imperfect: εἶχον)
   This is straightforward.

   Examples:

ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔχει ἵππον.	*The general has a horse.*
οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἶχον ἵππους.	*The generals had horses.*

2. The 'Possessive Dative'. This consists of the third person singular/plural of the verb *to be* with a noun in the dative.

   Examples:

   ἔστι τῷ στρατηγῷ ἵππος.
   = *There is to the general a horse.*
   = *The general has a horse.*

   τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἦσαν ἵπποι.
   = *To the generals there were horses.*
   = *The generals had horses.*

Quick summary:
The object(s) owned is/are in the **nominative** case.
The person(s) owning the object is/are in the **dative** case.

Exercise 37.1

1. τῷ δούλῳ ἐστὶν ἵππος.
2. οὐκ ἦν σῖτος τοῖς δούλοις.
3. τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις εἰσι σύμμαχοι.
4. τοῖς δούλοις οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπλα.
5. ἦν νίκη τοῖς βαρβάροις.

Exercise 37.2

1. τοῖς στρατιώταις εἰσι καλοὶ ἵπποι.
2. οὐκ ἦν τοῖς ναύταις πλοῖα.
3. ἦσαν τῷ δεσπότῃ ἀγαθοὶ δοῦλοι.
4. τῇ νήσῳ εἰσι μακραὶ ὁδοί.
5. οὔκ εἰσι τοῖς πολίταις σῖτος καὶ οἶνος.

Exercise 37.3

1. The man has a slave.
2. The camp has gates.
3. The Athenians do not have a general.
4. The allies had weapons.
5. The enemy have horses.

§38 Revision Blitz!

Vocabulary 25	
διά + accusative	because of
διά + genitive	through
μετά + accusative	after
μετά + genitive	with
ἀποθνῄσκω	I die
αἰσχρός (like φίλιος)	disgraceful, ugly
δίκαιος (like φίλιος)	right, just, proper
ἐλεύθερος (like φίλιος)	free

Exercise 38.1

1. ἀποθνῄσκομεν.
2. ἐβάλλομεν.
3. ἔγραψαν.
4. εὑρίσκουσιν.
5. ἔλεγον.
6. κρύπτειν.
7. ἤθελες.
8. ἔπεμψεν.
9. ἐθαυμάζομεν.
10. πιστεύετε.

Exercise 38.2

1. ἔπαύσαμεν.
2. ἔβαινον.
3. διώξομεν.
4. ἔτρεχεν.
5. ἐφυλάσσετε.
6. ἄξουσιν.
7. φέρετε.
8. ἐπαιδεύομεν.
9. ἀγγέλλεις.
10. ἐστρατεύσαμεν.

Exercise 38.3

1. They are dying.
2. We wanted.
3. You (singular)
4. They find.
5. He released.
6. They were
7. You (plural)
8. He announces.
9. They sacrificed.
10. I shall persuade.

Exercise 38.4

1. You (singular) prevented.
2. We shall persuade.
3. We arrange.
4. They were harming.
5. He was saving.
6. They marched.
7. They were.
8. I have trained.
9. They were fleeing.
10. They sent.

Exercise 38.5

1. ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ.
2. πρὸς τὴν νῆσον.
3. διὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ.
4. εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
5. ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης.
6. μετὰ τῶν δούλων.
7. μετὰ τὴν ναυμαχίαν.
8. διὰ τὴν νόσον.
9. ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου.
10. ἐν βίβλοις.

Exercise 38.6

1. With a horse.
2. Because of the sun.
3. After the war.
4. Through the roads.
5. In the sea.
6. Towards the trees.
7. Into the temples.
8. Away from the island.
9. Out of the danger.
10. Into the house.

Exercise 38.7

1. ἐβάλλομεν λίθους.
2. ὁ δοῦλος ἐλεύθερος ἦν.
3. σῖτον οὐκ ἔχομεν.
4. βίβλον γράψω.
5. ἀποθνῄσκειν οὐκ ἐθέλω.
6. οἱ πολέμιοι χαλεποί εἰσιν.
7. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐστράτευον.
8. ὁ δεσπότης δούλους ἔχει.
9. τῷ κριτῇ πιστεύσομεν.
10. ἆρ᾽ οἱ δοῦλοι ἔφευγον;

Exercise 38.8

1. ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ μένομεν.
2. σῖτον καὶ οἶνον οὐκ ἔχεις.
3. τὰ ζῷα ἔτρεχεν.
4. μὴ τρέχετε, ὦ πολῖται.
5. ἀγαθοὺς δούλους ἐπαιδεύσαμεν.
6. ἆθλα διώξομεν.
7. τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔκρυπτον.
8. ἆρα τὸ ἱερὸν νέον ἐστίν;
9. οἱ δοῦλοι εὖ ἐμάνθανον.
10. τοῖς τε θεοῖς καὶ ταῖς θεαῖς ἐθύσατε.

Exercise 38.9

1. The goddess was wise.
2. He was writing a book.
3. The children were running.
4. He will lead an army.
5. He wants to teach.
6. They persuaded the judge.
7. We chased the animals.
8. We heard the words.
9. Was the horse running?
10. Flee, children!

Exercise 38.10

1. We were throwing weapons.
2. The slaves wanted to flee.
3. They stopped the sea-battle.
4. I was speaking in the assembly.
5. Guard the houses, slaves!
6. You (singular) were amazed at the temples.
7. Is the judge wise?
8. The animals were fleeing.
9. We prevented a battle.
10. I trusted my (= the) doctor.

Exercise 38.11

1. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι σῖτον καὶ οἶνον ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ οὐκ ἔχουσιν.
2. οἱ τῶν σοφῶν κριτῶν λόγοι ἀεὶ δίκαιοί εἰσιν.
3. μὴ βάλλετε τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν, ὦ σύμμαχοι.
4. οἱ ναῦται ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας φεύγειν οὐκ ἤθελον.
5. ἆρ᾽ οἱ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς λόγοι αἰσχροὶ ἦσαν;
6. οἱ δοῦλοι ἐλεύθεροι εἶναι ἀεὶ ἐθέλουσιν.
7. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐδίωξαν τοὺς πολεμίους ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου.
8. οἱ πολῖται ἀποθνῄσκουσι διὰ τὴν κακὴν νόσον.
9. οἵ τε ναῦται καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔβαινον πρὸς τὴν καλὴν νῆσον.
10. οἱ τῶν κριτῶν λόγοι δίκαιοί τε καὶ σοφοὶ ἦσαν.

Exercise 38.12

1. The general persuaded the sailors not to throw their (= the) weapons into the river.
2. The allies were marching through the new camp with the hostile barbarians.
3. The trees of the island were both small and beautiful.
4. Young men always want to have food and wine in the house.
5. After the battle it was easy for the soldiers to flee from the camp.

Vocabulary 26	
πρό + genitive	in front of
καθίζω, aor: ἐκάθισα	I sit
καίω, fut: καύσω, aor: ἔκαυσα	I set on fire, burn
κόπτω, fut: κόψω, aor: ἔκοψα	I cut down

Exercise 38.13

1. παύομεν.
2. ἔλυσας.
3. ἔτρεχες.
4. ἐμανθάνομεν.
5. ἀποκτείνει.
6. ἔβλαψαν.
7. ἐδίδασκον.
8. ἔφερες.
9. κωλύσει.
10. ἀκούουσιν.

Exercise 38.14

1. ἔπεμψεν.
2. σῴζει.
3. ἐκαίετε.
4. λέγομεν.
5. μένει.
6. διώξω.
7. ἐπιστεύσατε.
8. ἐβαίνετε.
9. ἔκρυπτες.
10. φυλάσσομεν.

Exercise 38.15

1. θύσομεν.
2. ἐκέλευσα.
3. θεραπεύσει.
4. εὑρίσκετε.
5. ἔτασσεν.
6. ἀγγέλλετε.
7. ἄγομεν.
8. ἐθέλομεν.
9. στρατεύσουσιν.
10. ἐθαυμάζομεν.

Exercise 38.16

1. ἐφεύγον.
2. ἐπαρέχομεν.
3. εἶχεν.
4. λείπεις.
5. λαμβάνετε.
6. ἀποθνῄσκουσιν.
7. παιδεύσομεν.
8. καθίζουσιν.
9. πείθετε.
10. ἦσθα.

Exercise 38.17

1. οἱ νεανίαι οὐ κόψουσι τὰ δένδρα.
2. δεινὰ ζῷα ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἦν.
3. ὁ ποιητὴς ἔγραψε μακρὰς βίβλους.
4. τοῖς συμμάχοις ἦσαν ὅπλα τε καὶ ἵπποι.
5. τὴν τῶν θεῶν σοφίαν ἀεὶ θαυμάζομεν.

Exercise 38.18

1. μὴ τρέχε, ὦ νεανία.
2. ὁ τῶν δούλων διδάσκαλος ἀγαθός ἐστιν.
3. τοῖς τῆς θεᾶς λόγοις ἀεὶ ποστεύσομεν.
4. ἡ θάλασσα ἐκώλυσε τὴν τῶν Ἀθηναίων στρατιάν.
5. οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἵππους τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπάρεχον.

Exercise 38.19

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἄγει τοὺς τῶν συμμάχων στρατιώτας πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν.
2. οἱ λόγοι οἱ τοῦ κριτοῦ καλοί τε καὶ δίκαιοί εἰσιν.
3. ὁ ποιητὴς μακρὰς ἐπιστολὰς ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ πολλάκις ἔγραφεν.
4. ῥᾴδιον οὐκ ἔστιν ἵππον κρύπτειν.
5. οἱ πολεμίοι τοὺς ἀνδρείους Ἀθηναίους ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐδίωκον.

Exercise 38.20

1. The bad young men were throwing weapons.
2. We do not have food and wine.
3. It is not easy to be brave.
4. We shall always sacrifice to the gods in the market place.
5. The general was arranging the soldiers and the horses in front of the camp.

Exercise 38.21

1. The citizens ordered the young men not to harm the animals.
2. The strangers used to say bad words.
3. The animals were running away from the river.
4. The enemy’s bows stopped the battle.
5. We hear the shouts of the citizens in the market place.

§39 Elision

In English, the letters of some unimportant, usually short words are sometimes left out in order to make the sentence as a whole easier to say.

For example, *fish and chips* is usually pronounced *fish 'n' chips.* The *a* and the *d* of the word *and* disappear from the pronunciation. They are said to have been 'elided', which means 'struck out'. This process is known as 'elision'.

The Greeks were very conscious of how their language sounded, and elision happens when a short word ending in a vowel (e.g. the τε of τε... καί *both... and...*; or ἀλλὰ *but*; or the particle δέ *but, and*) is followed by a word beginning with a vowel. The elision is marked by an apostrophe, '.

Examples:
οἵ τ᾽ἄνθρωποι καὶ οἱ ἵπποι ἔτρεχον.
(= οἵ τε ἄνθρωποι...)
Both the men and the horses were running.

οἱ δ᾽Ἀθηναῖοι ἔτρεχον.
(= οἱ δε Ἀθηναῖοι)
And/but the Athenians were running.

λέγουσιν ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἀκούουσιν.
(= ἀλλὰ οὐκ)
They are speaking but they are not listening.

Beware of τε turning into θ !
If a τε appears before a word starting with a vowel or diphthong (two vowels pronounced as one) with a rough breathing, not only does the ε disappear, the τ combines with the following hard breathing (*h*-sound) to become θ.
So:
οἱ θ᾽ ἵπποι καὶ οἱ δοῦλοι ἔτρεχον.
(= οἱ τε ἵπποι)
Both the horses and the slaves were running.

§40 μέν... δέ...

The Greeks were fond of pointing out contrasts. These two little particles will be found in each half of the contrast, as the second word in each part. When you come across a μέν you can be sure that a δέ will not be far behind it.

Example:
οἱ μὲν Ἀθηναῖοι ἀγαθοί,
οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι κακοὶ ἦσαν.
The Athenians on the one hand were good,
but the Spartans on the other hand were bad.

To avoid clumsy English and to make your translation more natural, it is often better to ignore the μέν and to translate the δέ as simply *but* or even *whilst.* So the above example would be better translated as:
The Athenians were good, but the Spartans were bad.

Note also:
οἱ μέν... οἱ δέ... (masculine)
αἱ μέν... αἱ δέ... (feminine)
τὰ μέν... τὰ δέ... (neuter)
This expression simply means *some.... (but) others....*

Examples:
οἱ μὲν ἔφευγον, οἱ δὲ ἔμενον.
Some (men) were running away, (but) others were staying.

αἱ μὲν ἔφευγον, αἱ δὲ ἔμενον.
Some (women) were running away, (but) others were staying.

Vocabulary 27	
πράσσω, fut. πράξω, aor. ἔπραξα	I do, manage
εὖ πράσσω	I do well, am successful
κολάζω, fut. κολάσω, aor. ἐκόλασα	I punish
οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι (m. pl.)	the Spartans

Exercise 40.1

1. οἱ μὲν διδάσκουσιν, οἱ δὲ μανθάνουσιν.
2. οἱ μὲν Ἀθηναῖοι καλοὶ καὶ ἀγαθοί, οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι αἰσχροί ἦσαν.
3. οἱ μὲν τῶν στρατιώτων ἔμενον, οἱ δ᾽ἔφευγον.
4. τὰ ἆθλα μικρὰ μέν ἐστιν, καλὰ δέ.
5. ὁ στρατηγὸς οἶνον μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις παρέχει, σῖτον δὲ τοῖς δούλοις.

Exercise 40.2

1. αἱ μὲν εὖ γράφουσιν, αἱ δ᾽οὔ.
2. τὸ τῶν θεῶν ἱερὸν νέον μὲν ἦν, καλὸν δέ.
3. τὰ ἔργα τὰ μὲν Ἀθηναίων καλὰ, τὰ δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων κακὰ ἦν.
4. οἱ πολεμίοι τοὺς μὲν πολίτας κολάζουσιν, τοῦς δὲ δούλους ἀποκτείνουσιν.
5. οἱ μὲν Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐν μάχαις εὖ πράσσουσιν, οἱ δ᾽Ἀθηναίοι δ᾽οὔ.

Exercise 40.3

1. Some men are good, others bad.
2. The soldiers were sitting, but the slaves were fleeing.
3. We sacrifice to the gods, but not to the goddesses.
4. We were teaching the citizens, but we were punishing the slaves.
5. The Athenians were friendly, but the Spartans were hostile.

Exercise 40.4

1. The young men stayed in the camp with the soldiers.
2. After the victory we sacrificed to the friendly gods.
3. The judges spoke wise words in the assembly.
4. We heard the citizens' voices in the market place.
5. The young men were friendly, but the soldiers were hostile.

Exercise 40.5

1. ὁ ἐχθρὸς δεσπότης ἐκόλασε τοὺς ἐνοίκους.
2. οἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων στρατιῶται εὖ ἔπραξαν.
3. οἱ μὲν τὰ δένδρα ἔβλαπτον, οἱ δὲ τὰς οἰκίας.
4. ὁ νεανίας ἤκουσε τοὺς τοῦ κριτοῦ λόγους.
5. ἐδιώξαμεν τοὺς ἵππους εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν.
6. οἱ τοῦ ἀγγέλου λόγοι ἔπαυσαν τὴν μάχην.
7. ὁ μὲν δοῦλός ἐστιν ἀγαθός, ὁ δε δεσπότης κακός.
8. τὰ τῶν βαρβάρων δεινὰ ὅπλα ἔβλαψε τοὺς πολίτας.
9. ἡ τοῦ ποιητοῦ ἐπιστολὴ μακρὰ μὲν ἦν, ἀγαθὴ δέ.
10. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐφύλαξαν τὸ στρατόπεδον τοῖς ὅπλοις.

Vocabulary 28	
οἷός τ᾽εἰμί + infinitive	I am able, I can
ἀναγκάζω, fut. ἀναγκάσω, aor. ἠνάγκασα + infinitive	I force someone (accusative) to do something (infinitive)
τέλος	at last, finally
τότε	then
μάλιστα	very much

Note on οἷός τ᾽εἰμί, *I am able, I can*

The οἷός here is an adjective, with endings like those of φίλιος. The ending agrees with the subject of the sentence, and in these sort of sentences there will usually be an infinitive (*to*-word) somewhere nearby, to let you know what someone is able or unable *to* do.

Examples:

ὁ δοῦλος οἷός τ᾽ἦν φεύγειν. (masculine singular)
The slave was able to flee.

οἱ δοῦλοι οἷοί τ᾽ἦσαν φεύγειν. (masculine plural)
The slaves were able to flee.

ἡ θεὰ οἵα τ᾽ἦν φεύγειν. (feminine singular)
The goddess was able to flee.

αἱ θεαὶ οἷαί τ᾽ἦσαν φεύγειν. (feminine plural)
The goddesses were able to flee.

Negative note: spelling alert!
When we are told that someone is <u>not</u> able to do something
the final κ of the negative οὐκ combines with the hard breathing (῾) of the οἷός to become χ.

Example:
αἱ θεαὶ <u>οὐχ</u> οἷαί τ᾽ἦσαν φεύγειν.
The goddesses were not able to flee.

§41 *The enemy defeat the Athenians in Sicily, but do not kill those who can recite the poetry of Euripides.*

οἱ Ἀθηναῖοί <u>ποτε</u> ἔπεμψαν στρατιὰν πρὸς τὴν Σικελίαν. ἤθελον γὰρ τότε τὴν νῆσον λαμβάνειν. ἐν δὲ τῇ στρατιᾷ ἦσαν <u>πολλοὶ</u> στρατιῶται καὶ <u>πολλοὶ</u> ναῦται καὶ <u>πολλοὶ</u> σύμμαχοι. τέλος δὲ ἐν μάχῃ μακρᾷ οἱ πολέμιοι <u>ἐνίκησαν</u> τοὺς Ἀθηναίους καὶ ἠνάγκασαν <u>αὐτοὺς</u> φεύγειν. <u>ἀπέκτειναν</u> μὲν <u>πολλοὺς</u> Ἀθηναίους, ἔσωσαν δὲ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους <u>οἳ</u> οἷοί τε ἦσαν λέγειν τοὺς λόγους τοὺς τοῦ Εὐριπίδου, τοῦ σοφοῦ ποιητοῦ Ἀθηναίου. οἱ γὰρ πολέμιοι τον Εὐριπίδην μάλιστα ἐθαύμαζον.

ποτε = once

πολλοὶ/πολλοὺς = many

ἐνίκησαν = defeated

αὐτοὺς = them
ἀπέκτειναν = (they) killed

οἳ = who

§42 Quick revision: infinitives

Exercise 42.1

1. ἐπείσαμεν τοὺς πολίτας μὴ φεύγειν.
2. χαλεπόν ἐστι πείθειν τὸν στρατηγόν.
3. ὁ δεσπότης ἐκώλυε τὸν δοῦλον βλάπτειν τὸν ἵππον.
4. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἠνάγκασαν τοὺς πολεμίους φεύγειν.
5. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκέλευσε τοὺς στρατιώτας μὴ τρέχειν.

Exercise 42.2

1. ῥᾴδιον ἦν λαμβάνειν τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στρατόπεδον.
2. ὁ δεσπότης ἐκώλυσε τοὺς δούλους φυλάσσειν τὸ ποταμόν.
3. οἱ στρατιῶται οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ ἦσαν καίειν τοῦς νεκρούς.
4. οἱ τοῦ κριτοῦ λόγοι πείθουσι τοὺς πολίτας τῷ στρατηγῷ πιστεύειν.
5. ἀγαθὸν μὲν ἐστιν ἐν μάχῃ εὖ πράσσειν, αἰσχρὸν δὲ φεύγειν.

Exercise 42.3

1. The master does not want to punish slaves.
2. We cannot flee from the camp.
3. The general forced the soldiers to sacrifice to the gods.
4. The judge persuaded the citizens not to stay in the market place.
5. It is difficult to trust a bad doctor.

§43 Some notes on the definite article 'the'

1. It is used with abstract nouns (nouns you cannot touch, e.g. *love*, *honour*, *freedom*).
   Example: ἡ εἰρήνη. *Peace.*

2. It is used to denote whole classes.
   Example: οἱ ναῦται σοφοί εἰσιν.
   Sailors (in general) *are wise.*

3. It is used with people's names.
   Example: ὁ Νικίας. *Nicias.*

4. It is <u>not</u> used with the complement of the verb 'to be'.
   Example: ὁ Νικίας στρατηγὸς ἦν.
   Nicias was <u>the</u> general.

5. It is <u>not</u> used if the meaning is 'some'.
   Example: σῖτον ἔχομεν.
   We have (some) *food.*

6. It is used as a possessive ('my', 'your', 'his' etc) when it's obvious who the possessor is.
   Example: οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφερον τὰ ὅπλα.
   The soldiers were bringing <u>their</u> weapons.

7. It can be used with adverbs or adjectival phrases to form nouns.
   Examples: οἱ νῦν. *People nowadays.*
   οἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ. *The men in the house.*

8. + δέ = *and/he/she* etc (picking up someone or something mentioned at the end of the previous sentence.)
   Example: οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκόλασαν τὸν στρατιώτην. ὁ δὲ κακὸς ἦν.
   The generals punished the soldier; and he was wicked.

9. οἱ μέν... οἱ δέ... = *some... others...*
   Example: οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοί, οἱ δὲ κακοί εἰσιν.
   Some men are good, others are bad.

10. Prepositional phrases: the sandwich construction (as in genitive sandwiches) can be used, or the *the* can be repeated.
Example: οἱ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ στρατιῶται...
The soldiers in the camp...

οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ...
The soldiers the-in-the-camp-ones...

11. τά + genitive = *the affairs/matters of...*
Example: τὰ τῶν Ἀθηναίων.
The affairs of the Athenians.

Exercise 43.1

1. οἱ νῦν οὐ δίκαιοί εἰσιν.
2. οἱ πόλεμοι κακοί εἰσιν.
3. οἱ μὲν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἔμενον, οἱ δὲ ἔφευγον.
4. οἱ στρατιῶται σῖτον καὶ ὅπλα ἔχουσιν.
5. οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ σῖτον οὐκ εἶχον.
6. οἱ κριταὶ ἐκόλασαν τὸν δεσπότην. ὁ δὲ κακὸς ἄνθρωπος ἦν.
7. οἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ δοῦλοι ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν.
8. οἱ ἄνθρωποι τὴν εἰρήνην ἀεὶ διώκουσιν.
9. οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀεὶ εὖ ἔπρασσον τὰ τοῦ πολέμου.
10. ὁ Νικίας τοὺς στρατιώτας ἄγει εἰς τὴν μάχην.

§44 More question words

We have already met open questions: these are questions which expect the answer *yes* or *no*. If you remember, an ἆρα (ἆρ᾽ before a vowel) is added to the front of the sentence, and a Greek question mark (; - the same as an English semi-colon) to the end.

Examples:

Statement		Open Question
γράφει ἐπιστολήν.	⟶	ἆρα γράφει ἐπιστολήν;
He is writing a letter.		*Is he writing a letter?*
οἱ δοῦλοι ἔτρεχον.	⟶	ἆρ᾽ οἱ δοῦλοι ἔτρεχον;
The slaves were running.		*Were the slaves running?*

Here are some more question words.

Vocabulary 29	
ἆρα	(open question)
διὰ τί;	why?
πόθεν;	from where?
ποῖ;	to where?
πότε;	when?
ποῦ;	where?
πῶς;	how?
τίς;	who?
τί;	what?

Here is the full table of τῖς; *who?*; τί; *what?*

Singular	m./f.	n.	
nominative	τίς	τί	*who? what? which?*
accusative	τίνα	τί	*whom? what? which?*
genitive	τίνος	τίνος	*whose?*
dative	τίνι	τίνι	*to whom? to what?*
Plural			
nominative	τίνες	τίνα	*who? what? which?*
accusative	τίνας	τίνα	*whom? what? which?*
genitive	τίνων	τίνων	*whose?*
dative	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	*to whom? to what?*

These three interrogative (questioning) adjectives have endings like those of σοφός:

Vocabulary 30	
ποῖος;	what sort of?
πόσος;	how big?, how much?
πόσοι; (plural endings)	how many?

Exercise 44.1

1. ἆρ᾽ὁ κριτὴς δίκαιός ἐστιν;
2. πῶς ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔσωσε τὴν στρατιάν;
3. πότε ἔθυσας τῷ ἡλίῳ;
4. ἆρ᾽οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἐκάθευδον ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ;
5. ἆρ᾽ὁ νεανίας εὖ ἔλεγεν ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ;
6. ἆρ᾽οἱ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγοι σοφοὶ ἦσαν;
7. ἆρ᾽ἄκουεις τοὺς τῶν θεῶν λόγους;
8. πόσον σῖτον ἔχομεν;
9. ἆρ᾽οἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων σύμμαχοι εὖ ἔπραξαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ;
10. ἆρ᾽οἱ στρατιῶται πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔτρεχον;

Exercise 44.2

1. ποῦ ἐσμεν;
2. πότε ἦν ἡ δεινὴ μάχη;
3. πόθεν οἱ νεανίαι ἔτρεχον;
4. ποῖ οἱ πολεμίοι ἔβαινον;
5. τίς ἔλυσε τοὺς κακοὺς δούλους;
6. πόσον ἦν τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στρατόπεδον;
7. τί ἔλεγον οἱ στρατιῶται;
8. ποῦ ἐστι τὸ στρατόπεδον;
9. διὰ τί οἱ νεανίαι βλάπτουσι τὰ καλὰ δένδρα;
10. πόσοι στρατιῶται ἐν τῇ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων στρατιᾷ ἦσαν;

Exercise 44.3

1. τίνες ἦσαν οἱ νεανιάι;
2. τίνα ἐσώσατε ἐν τῇ δεινῇ μάχῃ, ὦ στρατιῶται;
3. τίσι οἱ σύμμαχοι ὅπλα ἐπάρεχον;
4. ποίους δούλους ἔχει ὁ δεσπότης;
5. τίνος μύθους ἤκουες ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ;

Exercise 44.4

1. Whom were the slaves chasing?
2. How many books does the poet have?
3. In which camp were the soldiers staying?
4. Which army is the general leading?
5. Which wine do you wish to have?

§45 Third Declension Nouns: masculine and feminine group

These are common. They follow the following pattern:

	singular	plural
nominative	-	stem + ες
vocative	(usually the same as nominative)	stem + ες
accusative	stem + α	stem + ας
genitive	stem + ος	stem + ων
dative	stem + ι	stem + σι (ν)

(The meaning of 'stem' is explained below).

Here is a sample noun which follows this pattern:

ὁ φύλαξ, φύλακος*, guard

	singular	plural
nominative	φύλαξ	φύλακες
vocative	φύλαξ	φύλακες
accusative	φύλακα	φύλακας
genitive	φύλακος	φυλάκων
dative	φύλακι	φύλαξι(ν)

* The second word given in wordlists is the genitive singular. Remove the -ος to get the stem, on which most of the table is based. Here the φύλακος therefore gives a stem of φύλακ-, on to which the endings are added.

Dative plurals are sometimes tricky. Here the κ at the end of the stem combines with the σ of the ending to form ξ.

Here are two more examples. Note again how the dative plurals are a bit tricky.

ὁ γέρων, γέροντος, old man

	singular	plural
nominative	γέρων	γέροντες
vocative	γέρον	γέροντες
accusative	γέροντα	γέροντας
genitive	γέροντος	γερόντων
dative	γέροντι	γέρουσι (ν)

ὁ ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, man

	singular	plural
nominative	ἀνήρ	ἄνδρες
vocative	ἄνερ	ἄνδρες
accusative	ἄνδρα	ἄνδρας
genitive	ἀνδρός	ἀνδρῶν
dative	ἀνδρί	ἀνδράσι (ν)

Vocabulary 31	
ὁ ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός (dat.pl. ἀνδράσι)	man
ἡ ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος (dat.pl. ἀσπίσι)	shield
ὁ γέρων, γέροντος (dat.pl. γερούσι)	old man
ὁ Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος (dat.pl. Ἕλλησι)	Greek
ἡ νύξ, νυκτός (dat.pl. νυξί)	night
ὁ/ἡ παῖς, παιδός (dat.pl. παισί)	child/son/daughter/boy/girl
ὁ πούς, ποδός (dat.pl. ποσί)	foot
ὁ φύλαξ, φύλακος (dat.pl. φύλαξι)	guard
ἡ χείρ, χειρός (dat.pl. χερσί)	hand
φόνευω	I murder

Exercise 45.1

1. διώκομεν τοὺς φύλακας.
2. ἡ νύξ ἔπαυσε τὴν μάχην.
3. μὴ βλάπτε τὸν παῖδα, ὦ φύλαξ.
4. διὰ τί ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐκάθευδε ἐν τῇ νήσω;
5. χαλεπὸν ἦν τῷ γέροντι ἐπιστολὴν γράφειν.
6. οἱ γέροντες οὐκ ἀκούουσι τοὺς τῶν παίδων λόγους.
7. οἵ τε γέροντες καὶ οἱ νεανίαι ἀνδρεῖοι ἦσαν.
8. τοὺς παῖδας εὖ φυλάσσετε, ὦ Ἕλληνες.
9. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐφόνευσαν τοὺς ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ φύλακας.
10. οἱ γέροντες οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ἦσαν ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τρέχειν.

Exercise 45.2

1. The guards were leaving the old men.
2. The nights were long.
3. The old man's children were running.
4. The man trusted the guard.
5. Don't chase children, Greeks!

§46 Numbers

Here are the cardinal numbers from 1 to 10:

Vocabulary 32	
εἷς, μία, ἕν	one
δύο	two
τρεῖς, τρία	three
τέτταρες, τέτταρα	four
πέντε	five
ἕξ	six
ἑπτά	seven
ὀκτώ	eight
ἐννέα	nine
δέκα	ten

The numbers 1-4 change their endings depending on the case and gender of the nouns they are referring to, as follows:

	one			**two**	**three**	
	m.	**f.**	**n.**	**(m./f./n.)**	**m./f.**	**n.**
nominative	εἷς	μία	ἕν	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία
accusative	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία
genitive	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός	δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν
dative	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί	δυοῖν	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)

	four	
	m./f.	**n.**
nominative	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
accusative	τέτταρας	τέτταρα
genitive	τεττάρων	τεττάρων
dative	τέτταρσι(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)

Here are the ordinal numbers from 1st to 5th:

Vocabulary 30	
πρώτος, -η, -ον	first
δεύτερος, -α, -ον	second
τρίτος, -η, -ον	third
τέταρτος, -η, -ον	fourth
πέμπτος, -η, -ον	fifth

These ordinals have endings like the adjectives σοφός and, in the case of δεύτερος, like φίλιος.

§47 Time

Expressions of Time

When expressing time, Greek does not use specific words for *in*, *at*, *on*, *within*, *during*, etc. Instead, the words expressing the time go into a particular case, as follows:

Duration: *for* = accusative endings
Example: ἐτρέχομεν πέντε ἡμέρ**ας.**
We were running for five days.

When: *in, at, on* = dative endings
Example: ἔγραψα **τῇ** τρίτ**ῃ** ἡμέρ**ᾳ.**
I wrote on the third day.

***Vague time*:** *within, during* = genitive endings
Example: γράψω ἑπτὰ ἡμερ**ῶν.**
I will write within seven days.

Here is some vocabulary you will come across in expressions of time. The first two items should already be familiar.

Vocabulary 34	
ἡ ἡμέρα	day
ἡ νύξ, νυκτός	night
ἡ ἑσπέρα	evening
ὁ χρόνος	time

Exercise 47.1

1. τῆς νύκτος ὁ φύλαξ ἐφόνευσε τὸν γέροντα.
2. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον τοὺς πολεμίους ἕξ ἡμέρας.
3. οἱ νεανίαι ἔφευγον πέντε ἡμέρας.
4. ὁ δεσπότης λύσει τὸν δοῦλον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν.
5. τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ τοῖς θεοῖς ἐθύσαμεν.

Exercise 47.2

1. οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμενον ἐν τῇ νήσῳ μακρὸν χρόνον.
2. οἱ στρατιῶται δύο ἡμέρας ἐφύλασσον τὸ στρατόπεδον.
3. τῇ τρίτῃ ἑσπέρᾳ ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔλυσε τοὺς ἵππους.
4. ἐπιστολὴν τριῶν ἡμερῶν πέμψω.
5. τῇ δευτέρᾳ νυκτὶ ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔπαυσε τὴν μάχην.

Exercise 47.3

1. ὁ γέρων ἔτρεχε μακρὸν χρόνον.
2. οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ ἐσόμεθα παρασκευάζειν τὴν στρατιὰν τριῶν ἡμέρων.
3. τίς ἤκουσε τὴν τοῦ γέροντος φωνήν;
4. διὰ τί ἐκέλευσε ὁ φύλαξ τοὺς παῖδας βλάπτειν τὰ καλὰ δένδρα;
5. τοῖς ἀνθρώποις δύο πόδες καὶ δύο χεῖρές εἰσιν.

Exercise 47.4

1. On the third evening.
2. For ten days.
3. On the second night.
4. For a long time.
5. During the night.

§48 Third Declension Nouns: neuter group

These are common. They follow the following pattern:

	singular	plural
nominative	-	stem + α
vocative	(same as nominative)	stem + α
accusative	(same as nominative)	stem + α
genitive	stem + ος	stem + ων
dative	stem + ι	stem + σι(ν)

Here is a sample noun which follows this pattern:

τὸ σῶμα, σώματος, body

	singular	plural
nominative	σῶμα	σώματα
vocative	σῶμα	σώματα
accusative	σῶμα	σώματα
genitive	σώματος	σωμάτων
dative	σώματι	σώμασι(ν)

Another group of common neuter nouns ends in –ος
(do not confuse these with masculine nouns like λόγος!):

τὸ τεῖχος, τείχους, wall

	singular	plural
nominative	τεῖχος	τείχη
vocative	τεῖχος	τείχη
accusative	τεῖχος	τείχη
genitive	τείχους	τειχῶν
dative	τείχει	τείχεσι(ν)

Vocabulary 35	
τὸ σῶμα, σώματος	body
τὸ ὄνομα, ὀνόματος	name
τὰ χρήματα, χρημάτων (pl.)	money, goods, property
τὸ τεῖχος, τείχους	wall
τὸ ἔτος, ἔτους	year
τὸ ξίφος, ξίφους	sword
τὸ ὄρος, ὄρους	mountain
μένω	I wait, wait for, remain

§49 αὐτός: him, her, it, them; -self

αὐτός = him, her, it, them etc.; -self

		m.	f.	n.
Singular	**nominative**	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
	accusative	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
	genitive	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
	dative	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
Plural	**nominative**	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
	accusative	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά
	genitive	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
	dative	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς

αὐτός has three basic uses:
1. an adjective adding emphasis.
2. a pronoun.
3. = *the same*

Study the examples on the following page:

1. Adjective - emphatic use ('-self')

Examples: ὁ στρατηγὸς αὐτὸς ἔφευγεν.
The general himself was running away.

ἔβλαπτε τὴν θεὰν αὐτήν.
He was harming the goddess herself.

2. Pronoun - 'him', 'her', 'it', 'them'

Examples: βλάπτομεν αὐτόν. = *We are harming him.*
βλάπτομεν αὐτήν. = *We are harming her.*
βλάπτομεν αὐτούς. = *We are harming them.*

Note also the genitive use:
βλάπτομεν τὸν δοῦλον αὐτοῦ. =
We are harming the slave of him. =
We are harming his slave.

βλάπτομεν τὸν δοῦλον αὐτῆς. =
We are harming the slave of her. =
We are harming her slave.

βλάπτομεν τοὺς δούλους αὐτῶν. =
We are harming the slaves of them. =
We are harming their slaves.

3. = *the same*

Word order: word for *the* + αὐτός + noun (i.e. as in English!)

Examples:
ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνήρ *the same man*
αἱ αὐταὶ θεαί *the same goddesses*
τὰ αὐτὰ ὅπλα *the same weapons*

Sometimes the word for *the* merges with the word for *same* when it begins with a vowel. This leads to a strange-looking word with a breathing mark apparently in the middle of it, like this:

ταὐτὰ ὅπλα = τὰ αὐτὰ ὅπλα *the same weapons*

(The smart grammatical term for this is *crasis*, which means *blending*.)

Exercise 49.1

1. ὁ κριτὴς ἐπίστευσεν αὐτοῖς.
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς αὐτὸς φεύγει.
3. ἆρα γράφεις τὰ ὀνόματα αὐτῶν;
4. ἀναγκάζομεν αὐτοὺς φεύγειν ἐκ τῆς χώρας.
5. οὐκ ἔβλαπτε τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτήν.
6. ἔχω τὰ χρήματα. αὐτὰ δὲ φέρω ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας.
7. ὁ γέρων ἔλεγε σοφοὺς λόγους αὐτῇ.
8. τὸ ἱερὸν αὐτὸ μικρὸν μέν ἐστιν, καλὸν δέ.
9. ὁ νεανίας ἔμενεν αὐτὴν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ.
10. τὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅπλα ἔσῳζεν αὐτούς.

Exercise 49.2

1. τὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ὄνομα Νικίας ἦν.
2. οἱ παῖδες ἔβλαπτον τὰ τῶν ἵππων σώματα τοῖς δεινοῖς ξίφεσιν.
3. ἐπιστολὴν μακρὰν ἐγράψαμεν καὶ αὐτὴν ἐπέμψαμεν πρὸς τὸν γέροντα.
4. οἱ Ἕλληνες αὐτοὶ ἤθελον παύειν τὴν μάχην.
5. χαλεπὸν ἔσται λαμβάνειν τὸ ἐν τῷ ὄρει στρατόπεδον.
6. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἤθελον τὰ τῶν πολεμίων χρήματα λαμβάνειν.
7. πέντε ἔτη οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ οἱ σύμμαχοι αὐτῶν εὖ ἔπραξαν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ.
8. ἤκουσα τοὺς τοῦ θεοῦ λόγους καὶ ἐθαύμαζον αὐτούς.
9. οἱ κριταὶ ἐκέλευσαν τὸν στρατηγὸν μὴ ἄγειν αὐτούς.
10. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ὅπλα εἶχον καὶ ἔφερον αὐτὰ εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον.

Exercise 49.3

1. The guards are capturing him.
2. Her name is beautiful.
3. The master is not killing her.
4. The allies were always trusting him.
5. The goddess' body was beautiful.

Exercise 49.4

1. Their swords and weapons are terrible.
2. The old man himself announces the victory to the citizens.
3. Friendly men do not kill children.
4. It is not easy to trust the judge himself.
5. The general ordered the old men to guard the walls of the camp.

§50 ***Despite Poseidon's hostility, Odysseus, trying to return home, escapes to Calypso's island. Athene sends Hermes to tell her not to keep Odysseus imprisoned there.***

ὁ Ποσειδῶν, ὁ τῆς θαλάσσης θεός,
ἔχθρὸς ἦν τῷ Ὀδυσσεῖ καὶ ἤθελε
ἀποκτείνειν αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ τέλος ἔφευγεν
ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης πρὸς τὴν νῆσον τὴν
τῆς θεᾶς, ὀνόματι Καλύψους. ἡ μὲν
Καλυψὼ ἠνάγκαζε τὸν Ὀδυσσέα ἐν τῇ
νήσῳ μένειν, ἡ δὲ Ἀθήνη ἀεὶ φιλία ἦν
αὐτῷ. ἔπεισε οὖν τὸν Ἑρμῆν, τὸν τῶν
θεῶν ἄγγελον, βαίνειν πρὸς τὴν
Καλυψὼ καὶ λέγειν <u>οὕτως</u>·
‘μὴ κώλυε τὸν Ὀδυσσέα <u>οἴκαδε</u> βαίνειν.
ἔργον γὰρ αἰσχρόν ἐστι βλάπτειν
δίκαιον ἄνθρωπον καὶ ἀνδρεῖον.’

οὕτως = as follows
οἴκαδε = (to) home

Punctuation note:
Look at the last word of line 10 above: οὕτως·
The single dot at the top – · – is the Greek equivalent of an English colon (:).

§51 Some irregular nouns

		woman (f.)	city (f.)	ship (f.)
Singular	**nominative**	γυνή	πόλις	ναῦς
	vocative	γύναι	πόλις	ναῦ
	accusative	γυναῖκα	πόλιν	ναῦν
	genitive	γυναικός	πόλεως	νεώς
	dative	γυναικί	πόλει	νηί
Plural	**nominative**	γυναῖκες	πόλεις	νῆες
	vocative	γυναῖκες	πόλεις	νῆες
	accusative	γυναῖκας	πόλεις	ναῦς
	genitive	γυναικῶν	πόλεων	νεῶν
	dative	γυναιξί(ν)	πόλεσι(ν)	ναυσί(ν)

		king (m.)	Zeus (m.)
Singular	**nominative**	βασιλεύς	Ζεύς
	vocative	βασιλεῦ	Ζεῦ
	accusative	βασιλέα	Δία
	genitive	βασιλέως	Διός
	dative	βασιλεῖ	Διί
Plural	**nominative**	βασιλῆς/εῖς	
	vocative	βασιλῆς/εῖς	
	accusative	βασιλέας	
	genitive	βασιλέων	
	dative	βασιλεῦσι(ν)	

Vocabulary 36	
ὁ βασιλεύς, βασιλέως	king
ὁ ἱππεύς, ἱππέως	cavalryman (pl. ἱππεῖς the cavalry)
ἡ γυνή, γυναικός (dat.pl. γυναιξί[ν])	woman, wife
ὁ Ζεύς, Διός	Zeus
ἡ ναῦς, νεώς	ship
ἡ πόλις, πόλεως	city, state
ὁ ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος (dat.pl. ἄρχουσι[ν])	ruler, magistrate
ἡ Ἑλλας, Ἑλλάδος	Greece
ὁ ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος (dat.pl. ἡγεμόσι[ν]))	leader
ἡ μήτηρ, μητρός (dat.pl. μητράσι[ν]))	mother*
ὁ πατήρ, πατρός (dat.pl. πατράσι[ν]))	father*
ἡ θυγάτηρ, θυγάτρος (dat.pl. θυγατράσι[ν])	daughter*
ὁ λιμήν, λιμένος (dat.pl. λιμέσι[ν]))	harbour
ἐπί + acc.	against, onto, on, at

*For the complete tables of *mother*, *father* and *daughter* see the Grammar Summary, page 226.

Exercise 51.1

1. τὸ ὄνομα τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦ τῶν πολεμίων Ξέρξης ἦν.
2. οἱ σύμμαχοι ἔπεμψαν ὅπλα τε καὶ ἔξ ναῦς πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.
3. αἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων νῆες ἔσωσαν τὴν πόλιν.
4. ὁ ἄρχων ἐκέλευσε τὴν γυναῖκα μὴ πιστεύειν τῷ κακῷ
5. διὰ τὴν νόσον ὁ ἰατρὸς τοὺς γέροντας ἠνάγκασε βαίνειν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως.

Exercise 51.2

1. οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες ἐχθροὶ ἦσαν, αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες φίλιαι.
2. ὁ Νικίας ἐχθρὸς ἦν τῷ τῶν πολεμίων ἡγεμόνι.
3. διὰ τί ὁ πατὴρ ἐκέλευσε τὴν θυγατέρα ἐν τῇ πόλει μένειν;
4. αἱ νῆες οὐχ οἷαί τ᾽ ἦσαν βλάπτειν τὰ τῆς πόλεως τείχη.
5. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐφύλασσον τὰς ἐν τῷ λιμένι ναῦς.

Exercise 51.3

1. Why were the wicked young men running through the streets of the city?
2. The soldiers in the camp often used to sacrifice to Zeus.
3. The evil woman ordered the guard to kill the old man during the night with his sword.
4. The hostile leader sent an army against the Greeks in ships.
5. For three years the handsome young man was chasing the king's daughter.

§52 τις

τις = someone/thing, anyone/thing, a certain, some etc.

		masculine/ feminine	neuter
Singular	**nominative**	τις	τι
	accusative	τινά	τι
	genitive	τινός	τινός
	dative	τινί	τινί
Plural	**nominative**	τινές	τινά
	accusative	τινάς	τινά
	genitive	τινῶν	τινῶν
	dative	τισί(ν)	τισί(ν)

Notes on τις

τις never appears as the first word in a sentence, unlike τίς; or τί; (*Who? What?*). It can be used as a pronoun or an adjective. Study the following examples:

Pronoun

βλάπτει τις τοὺς ἵππους.
Someone is harming the horses.

ἆρ᾽ἐθέλεις λέγειν τι;
Do you want to say something/anything?

Adjective
δοῦλός τις βλάπτει τοὺς ἵππους.
A certain slave/one of the slaves is harming the horses.

δοῦλοί τινες βλάπτουσι τοὺς ἵππους.
Some/certain slaves are harming the horses.

Vocabulary 37	
τις	a certain
ὀλίγοι, ὀλίγαι, ὀλίγα	few (plural endings)
εἰ	if
ὅτε	when
ὅτι	because
οὔτε... οὔτε...	either... or...
ἑτοῖμος, ἑτοίμη, ἑτοῖμον	ready
μόνος, μόνη, μόνον	alone

Exercise 52.1

1. φεύγει τις ἐκ τῆς μάχης.
2. ὁ ποιητὴς ἤθελε γράφειν τι.
3. φύλακές τινες ἔχουσιν ὅπλα.
4. ἡ νόσος ἀποκτείνει πολίτας τινάς.
5. δοῦλοί τινες ἦσαν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.
6. οἱ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐπίστευον θεοῖς τισιν.
7. οὐ ῥᾴδιον ἔσται πείθειν τινὰ μένειν ἐν τῇ
8. στρατιῶταί τινες ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἦσαν.
9. ἔστιν ἰατρός τις ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ.
10. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐκόλασε στρατιώτην τινά.

§53 *Codrus saves Athens by sacrificing his own life.*

ὁ Κόδρος ἦν βασιλεύς τις τῶν Ἀθηναίων. ἀνὴρ δὲ σοφὸς ἦν. ὅτε δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι ἔπεμψαν στρατιὰν πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας, ὁ Κόδρος ἐκέλευσεν ἀγγέλους τινὰς βαίνειν πρὸς τὸ μαντεῖον. ὁ δὲ θεὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις ἔλεξεν· ‘ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν οἱ πολέμιοι παρέσονται. οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι ἕξουσι τὴν νίκην εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι ἀποκτενοῦσι τὸν Κόδρον αὐτόν.’ ὁ δὲ Κόδρος νῦν τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις ἔλεξεν· ‘ἑτοῖμός εἰμι ἀποθνῄσκειν. οἱ οὖν πολέμιοι οὐχ οἷοί τ’ἔσονται λαμβάνειν οὔτε τὴν πόλιν οὔτε τοὺς πολίτας.’ ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Κόδρος ἐστράτευσε μόνος ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἀπέθανεν. καὶ αὐτὸς διὰ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον ἔργον ἔσωσε τὰς Ἀθήνας.

μαντεῖον = oracle

παρέσονται = (they) will be present

ἕξουσι = (they) will have

ἀποκτενοῦσι = (they) will kill

ἀπέθανεν = (he) died

§54 Augments

As you know, when παύω forms its imperfect and aorist tenses the vowel ἐ- is added to the front of the stem παυ-. Hence ἔπαυον (imperfect: *I was stopping*) and ἔπαυσα (aorist: *I stopped*). This ἐ- is called an augment.

Not all verbs however start with a consonant like παύω does. Some start with a vowel. When the ἐ- is added to the front of a verb beginning with a vowel, that vowel is basically lengthened. Here are four basic rules for augmentation.

1. Verbs starting with a consonant: add ἐ-.
   παύω (*I stop*) becomes ἔπαυον (*I was stopping*).

2. Verbs starting with a vowel: lengthen the vowel.
   ἀ becomes ἠ: ἄγω (*I lead*) → ἦγον (*I was leading*)

   ἐ becomes ἠ: ἐθέλω (*I wish*) → ἤθελον (*I wished*)

   ὀ becomes ὠ: ὀρύσσω (*I dig*) → ὤρυσσον (*I was digging*)

3. Diphthongs ending with ι: the vowel is lengthened and the ι becomes a subscript.
   αἱρέω (*I take*) → ᾕρεον (*I was taking*)
   οἰκέω (*I live*) → ᾤκεον (*I was living*)

4. There is a very common but tricky irregular which is worth knowing:
   ἔχω (*I have*) → εἶχον (*I was having*)

§55 Compound Verbs

These are verbs which have their meaning slightly altered by the addition of a preposition at the front. Here are some examples, using the core verb βαίνω, *I go.*

ἀποβαίνω	*I go away*
διαβαίνω	*I go through, across*
ἐκβαίνω	*I go out*
εἰσβαίνω	*I go into*
προσβαίνω	*I go towards, attack*

In compound verbs the augment is inserted between the preposition and the core verb:

εἰσβαίνω *I go into* → εἰσέβαινον *I was going into*

εἰσάγω *I lead into* → εἰσῆγον *I was leading into*

Notes:

The preposition ἀπό has its ο replaced by an ε:

ἀποβαίνω *I go away* → ἀπέβαινον *I was going away*

ἐκ changes to ἐξ:

ἔκφευγω *I escape* → ἐξέφευγον *I was escaping*

Vocabulary 38	
διαφθείρω, fut. διαφθερῶ aor. διέφθειρα	I destroy
εἰσβάλλω	I throw into, invade
ἐκφεύγω	I escape
παρασκευάζω, aor. παρεσκεύασα	I prepare
προσβάλλω + dat.	I attack
συλλέγω, συλλέξω, συνέλεξα	I collect, assemble
τὸ ναυτικόν	fleet
περί + acc.	around
περί + gen.	about, concerning
διότι	because
ὡς	as, when, because

Exercise 55.1

1. τίνες παῖδες διέφθειρον τὴν οἰκίαν;
2. τί οἱ στρατιῶται αὐτοὶ ἐθέλουσιν;
3. τίς ἔπεμψε τὰς γυναῖκας ἐκ τῶν Ἀθήνων;
4. τί ἐκώλυσε τοὺς πολεμίους προσβάλλειν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ;
5. τίς ἐφύλασσε τὰ τῆς πόλεως τείχη;
6. τί λέγουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες;
7. τίνα ἐστὶ τὰ τῶν νεανιῶν ὀνόματα;
8. τίς δοῦλος κακὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔγραψε;
9. τίνες στρατιῶται εὖ ἔπραξαν ἐν τῇ δεινῇ μάχῃ;
10. τίνι τῶν φυλάκων οὐ πιστεύεις, ὦ στρατηγέ;

Exercise 55.2

1. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι στρατιώτας συνέλεξαν καὶ ναῦς παρεσκεύασαν.
2. οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι πολλάκις εἰσέβαλλον τὴν τῶν Ἀθηναίων χώραν.
3. δέκα ἔτη οἱ Ἕλληνες προσέβαλλον τῇ πόλει. ἔπειτα δὲ διέφθειραν αὐτήν.
4. διὰ τί δοῦλοί τινες ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐξέφευγον;
5. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἦγε στρατιάν τε καὶ ναυτικὸν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους.

Exercise 55.3

1. διὰ τὸν κίνδυνον οἱ ναῦται ἐξέφευγον ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης.
2. τίς περὶ τοῦ πολέμου ἔλεγεν ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ;
3. οἱ πολέμιοι ἤθελον εἰσβάλλειν τὴν χώραν καὶ προσβάλλειν τῇ τῶν Ἀθηναίων πόλει καὶ ἀποκτείνειν τοὺς πολίτας.
4. τῆς νυκτὸς ὁ δοῦλος ὅπλα συνέλεξε καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα ξίφει ἐφόνευσεν.
5. ὁ Ζεὺς ἐχθρὸς ἦν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ διέφθειρε τὰς ναῦς αὐτῶν.

§56 *The singer Arion, sailing from Italy to Corinth, escapes from some wicked sailors in an unusual way.*

ὁ Ἀρίων ἦν κιθαρῳδὸς καὶ διὰ τὴν καλὴν φωνὴν πλούσιος ἦν. ἔβαινε ποτε ἐν νηὶ ἀπ᾽ Ἰταλίας εἰς Κόρινθον. οἱ δὲ κακοὶ ναῦται, διότι ἐβούλευσαν τὰ τοῦ κιθαρῳδοῦ χρήματα καὶ τὸν χρυσὸν λαμβάνειν καὶ αὐτὸν ἀποκτείνειν, ἠνάγκασαν τὸν Ἀρίονα τὸ ἔσχατον ᾄδειν. ἀλλ᾽ ὁτε τὴν φωνὴν αὐτοῦ καλὴν ἤκουσαν, οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ ἦσαν τὸ αἰσχρὸν ἔργον πράσσειν. ὁ δὲ Ἀρίων αὐτὸς φεύγειν ἠθέλεσεν. ἔρριψεν οὖν ἑαυτὸν ἀπο τῆς νεὼς εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν. ἐθαύμαζον δὲ οἱ ναῦται, ὡς δελφίς τις ἔνεγκε τὸν Ἀρίονα πρὸς τὴν γῆν.

κιθαρῳδός = singer

ποτε = once

βούλευω = I plan, plot

τὸ ἔσχατον ᾄδειν = to sing for the last time

ἔρριψεν... ἑαυτὸν = he threw himself

δελφίς = dolphin
ἔνεγκε = carried

§57 Middle Verbs

A large number of important Greek verbs have a present tense ending not in -ω but in -ομαι. Their personal endings are as follows:

-ομαι	I
-ει/ῃ	You (singular)
-εται	He/She/It
-ομεθα	We
-εσθε	You (plural)
-ονται	They

You may remember these endings: they are the same as the future endings of εἰμί (ἔσομαι). These kinds of verbs are called Middle Verbs. Here are ten common examples:

Vocabulary 39	
αἰσθάνομαι	I notice
ἀποκρίνομαι	I answer, reply
ἄρχομαι	I begin
βούλομαι (+ infinitive)	I wish, want (to do something)
γίγνομαι	I become, happen
δέχομαι	I receive
ἔρχομαι	I come, go*
μάχομαι (+dat.)	I fight (with)
παύομαι (+ gen.)	I cease (from), stop (doing something)
πορεύομαι	I march, travel

*As you would expect, ἔρχομαι is a very common verb, and occurs in lots of compounds, e.g.

ἀπέρχομαι	I go away, depart
εἰσέρχομαι	I go into, enter
ἐξέρχομαι	I go/come out of
ἐπανέρχομαι	I return
προσέρχομαι	I go towards/approach

So, here is the present tense of παύομαι, *I cease from*, *I stop (doing something)* as an example:

παύομαι	I cease
παύει/παύῃ	You cease (singular)
παύεται	He ceases
παυόμεθα	We cease
παύεσθε	You cease (plural)
παύονται	They cease

(Present infinitive: παύεσθαι, to cease from)

Middle futures

εἰμί is not the only Greek verb which uses these middle endings for their futures. Here are four common ones:

ἀκούω	I hear, listen to	ἀκούσομαι	I shall hear, listen to
βαίνω	I go	βήσομαι	I shall go
λαμβάνω	I take, capture	λήψομαι	I shall take, capture
φεύγω	I flee	φεύξομαι	I shall flee

Exercise 57.1

1. ὁ δοῦλος οὐκ ἀποκρίνεται.
2. μαχόμεθα τοῖς πολεμίοις.
3. ὁ βασιλεὺς πλούσιος γίγνεται.
4. δῶρον δέχομαι.
5. οἱ ἄγγελοι ἐπανέρχονται.
6. οἱ βάρβαροι παύονται τῆς μάχης.
7. οὐ βουλόμεθα μάχεσθαι.
8. ἆρ᾽ αἴθεσθε τὸν βασιλέα;
9. διὰ τί ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου πόρευει;
10. εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν εἰσερχόμεθα.

Exercise 57.2

1. The soldiers want to attack the enemy.
2. The slaves are coming out of the city.
3. The king receives both money and weapons.
4. The Athenians are always fighting the Spartans.
5. The allies are marching into the camp.

Exercise 57.3

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς δέχεται τὰ ὅπλα.
2. οἱ δοῦλοι παύονται τοῦ ἔργου.
3. οἱ στρατιῶται βούλονται μάχεσθαι.
4. οὐ βουλόμεθα προσβάλλειν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ.
5. οἱ σύμμαχοι πορεύονται ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τῆς νυκτός.
6. πρὸς τὴν πόλιν προσερχόμεθα.
7. ὁ δοῦλος αἰσθάνεται τοὺς ἵππους τοὺς ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ.
8. ὁ ἄγγελος οὐ βούλεται ἀποκρίνεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις.
9. διὰ τί αἱ γυναῖκες ἐχθραὶ γίγνονται;
10. οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι μάχεσθαι ἄρχονται.

§58 The future, imperfect and aorist middle

Future *I will cease etc*	**Imperfect** *I was ceasing etc*	**Aorist** *I ceased etc.*
παύσομαι	ἐπαυόμην	ἐπαυσάμην
παύσει / παύσῃ	ἐπαύου	ἐπαύσω
παύσεται	ἐπαύετο	ἐπαύσατο
παυσόμεθα	ἐπαυόμεθα	ἐπαυσάμεθα
παύσεσθε	ἐπαύεσθε	ἐπαύσασθε
παύσονται	ἐπαύοντο	ἐπαύσαντο

Four tricky aorists:

Present			**Aorist**	
ἀποκρίνομαι	*I reply*	→	ἀπεκρινάμην	*I replied*
ἄρχομαι	*I begin*	→	ἠρξάμην	*I began*
δέχομαι	*I receive*	→	ἐδεξάμην	*I received*
μάχομαι	*I fight*	→	ἐμαχεσάμην	*I fought*

Vocabulary 40	
ὀργή, ἡ	anger
ὑπέρ + gen.	for, on behalf of

§59 *The Greek fleet cannot set sail until the general's daughter is sacrificed.*

οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐβούλοντο προσβάλλειν τῇ Τροίᾳ καὶ λαμβάνειν. συνέλεξαν οὖν στρατιώτας τε καὶ ναῦς. ἀλλ᾽ οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ ἦσαν πλεῦσαι διὰ τὴν τῆς θεᾶς ὀργήν. ὁ γὰρ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγὸς αὐτὴν ὕβρισε, καὶ ἡ θεὰ ἐκώλυσε τὰς ναῦς πλεῦσαι. γέρων τις ἔλεξε τῷ στρατηγῷ· ‘θύε τὴν θυγατέρα τῇ θεᾷ. ἔπειτα τὸ ναυτικὸν οἷά τ᾽ ἔσται πλεῦσαι.’ ὁ στρατηγὸς ἤκουσε μὲν τοὺς δεινους λόγους, χαλεπὸν δὲ αὐτῷ ἦν ἀποκτείνειν τὴν θυγατέρα. ἀλλα ἡ ἀνδρεία θυγάτηρ αὐτὴ ἐβούλετο ἀποθνῄσκειν ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος.

ἡ Τροία = Troy

πλεῦσαι = to sail

ὑβρίζω = I insult

ἡ πατρίς, πατρίδος = country, native land

§60 Some revision exercises

Exercise 60.1

1. τίς ἀκούσεται τοὺς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγους;
2. ἐδεξάμεθα τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπιστολήν.
3. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐμάχοντο δέκα ἔτη.
4. οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι πολῖται ἐβούλοντο εὖ μάχεσθαι.
5. οἱ στρατιῶται εὖ ἐμαχέσαντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
6. οἱ δοῦλοι οὐ φεύξονται ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου.
7. ὁ νεανίας οὐκ εὖ ἀπεκρίνατο.
8. ἡ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ μάχη εὖ ἤρξατο.
9. οἱ ἄγγελοι οὐκ ἀπεκρίναντο τῷ τὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἡγεμόνι.
10. οἱ δοῦλοι φεύξονται τῇ δευτέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ.

Exercise 60.2

1. You (singular) fought well.
2. We replied.
3. We shall flee.
4. You (plural) received.
5. They are going.
6. We were marching.
7. He began.
8. You (plural) are fighting.
9. We were wanting.
10. They will take.

Exercise 60.3

1. βησόμεθα πέντε ἡμερῶν.
2. ὁ δῆμος ἐδέξατο τὰ χρήματα.
3. τίς λήψεται τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στρατόπεδον;
4. ἔξ ἡμέρας ἐπορευσάμεθα.
5. ἐμαχόμεθα ἐν τῇ πόλει.

Exercise 60.4

1. We received a long letter.
2. The young men fought well in the battle.
3. The Athenians' soldiers were marching for five days.
4. Who wants to burn the enemy's camp?
5. We shall always listen to the general's wise words.

Exercise 60.5

1. ἐδέξατο τὴν ἐπιστολὴν τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ.
2. διὰ τί οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἤθελον μάχεσθαι;
3. οὐκ ἀεὶ αἰσχρόν ἐστι δέχεσθαι τὰ χρήματα.
4. οἱ σύμμαχοι δέξονται τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰς ναῦς τριῶν ἡμέρων.
5. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐμάχοντο δέκα ἔτη.

§61 Strong aorists

In English, regular verbs form their past tense by adding *-ed* to the verb stem.
e.g. I show → past tense: I showed

However, many past tenses in English are totally irregular:
e.g. I go → past tense: I went (not 'I goed'!).

The same thing happens in Greek. The aorist tense of some verbs changes form completely. Instead of the usual aorist endings (-σα, -σας, -σε, -σαμεν, -σατε, -σαν), these verbs have the same endings as those of the imperfect tense: -ον, -ες, -ε(ν), -ομεν, -ετε, -ον.

The stem preceding these endings often changes also, frequently becoming shorter than the original present stem. Such forms are called **Strong Aorists**, and are a common feature of Greek. Here is an example.

λαμβάνω *I take, capture*

Strong aorist:	ἔλαβον	I took, captured
	ἔλαβες	You took, captured (singular)
	ἔλαβε(ν)	He took, captured
	ἐλάβομεν	We took, captured
	ἐλάβετε	You took, captured (plural)
	ἔλαβον	They took, captured

Here are some common verbs which have strong aorists:

Present		Strong Aorist	
ἄγω	I lead	ἤγαγον	I led
ἀποθνήσκω	I die, am killed	ἀπέθανον	I died, was killed
βάλλω	I throw	ἔβαλον	I threw
εἰσβάλλω	I invade	εἰσέβαλον	I invaded
προσβάλλω	I attack	προσέβαλον	I attacked
ἔρχομαι	I go, come*	ἦλθον	I went, came
ἔχω	I have, hold	ἔσχον	I had, held
λαμβάνω	I take, capture	ἔλαβον	I took, captured
λέγω	I say	εἶπον	I said
ὁράω	I see (a new verb)	εἶδον	I saw
τρέχω	I run	ἔδραμον	I ran
φέρω	I carry	ἤνεγκον	I carried
φεύγω	I flee	ἔφυγον	I fled

***Compounds of ἔρχομαι**, *I go*
As we have already noted, these are common:

Present		Strong Aorist	
ἀπέρχομαι	I go away, depart	ἀπῆλθον	I went away, departed
εἰσέρχομαι	I go into, enter	εἰσῆλθον	I went into, entered
ἐξέρχομαι	I go out/come out of	ἐξῆλθον	I went out of
ἐπανέρχομαι	I return	ἐπανῆλθον	I returned
προσέρχομαι	I approach	προσῆλθον	I approached

Exercise 61.1

1. ἐβάλομεν.
2. εἰσήλθετε.
3. εἶδεν.
4. ἦλθες.
5. ἐφύγομεν.
6. εἶπεν.
7. ἔδραμον.
8. ἠνέγκετε.
9. ἤγαγες.
10. ἔσχεν.

Exercise 61.2

1. We died.
2. We went.
3. He ran.
4. You (plural) captured.
5. We led.
6. You (plural) had.
7. We saw.
8. You (singular) carried.
9. He fled.
10. They said.

Exercise 61.3

1. οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι στρατιῶται ἀπέθανον.
2. ἡ γυνὴ οὐκ εἶδε τοὺς κινδύνους.
3. μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἦλθομεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν.
4. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἤγαγε τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους.
5. οἱ κριταὶ εἶπον σοφοὺς λόγους τοῖς νεανίαις.
6. ὁ παῖς ἔδραμε εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
7. οἱ γέροντες ἔβαλον τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν.
8. ἐφύγομεν ἐκ τοῦ κινδύνου.
9. οἱ φύλακες ἔσχον ὅπλα τε καὶ χρήματα.
10. ὁ ἀνδρεῖος ναύτης ἀπέθανεν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.

Exercise 61.4

1. We saw the good dinner.
2. The boys ran out of the market place.
3. Who had the money?
4. The man was hiding his weapons in the camp.
5. Why did you (singular) throw stones into the river?

Vocabulary 41	
ἐνθάδε	here
ἐπεί	since, when
εὐθύς	immediately
λάθρᾳ	secretly
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον	our
ὕστερον	later
ἀγρός, ὁ	field
υἱός, ὁ	son
βουλή, ἡ	meeting; council
ὁ ἀγών, ἀγῶνος	contest, trial
παρά + gen.	from (a person)
παρά + acc.	along; contrary to
φαίνομαι + infinitive	I seem, appear (to....) – but it may not be definite *see example below

*ὁ κριτὴς φαίνεται σοφὸς εἶναι =
The judge seems to be wise. (He may be, but he may not be)

§62 *Paris, abandoned and left to die by his father Priam, returns to Troy as a young man.*

τῷ δὲ Πριάμῳ ἦν υἱός, ὀνόματι Πάρις, νεανίας καλός τε καὶ ἀνδρεῖος ὤν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ζεὺς ἠνάγκασεν αὐτὸν κριτὴν εἶναι ἐν τῷ τῶν θεῶν ἀγῶνι, οὐκ ἦν ἐν Τροίᾳ ἀλλὰ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς. ὕστερον δὲ ἡ θεὰ Ἀφροδίτη ἤγαγε τὸν νεανίαν εἰς τὴν Τροίαν. καὶ ὁ πατὴρ εἶδε τὸν νεανίαν καὶ τῇ μητρὶ εἶπεν· ‘οὗτος ὁ νεανίας φαίνεται ἡμέτερος υἱὸς εἶναι· οὐ δ’ἀπέθανεν.’ ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Πάρις ἦλθεν εἰς τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς οἰκίαν καὶ ἐκεῖ μακρὸν χρόνον ἔμενεν.

ὤν = being

οὗτος = this

§63 Present participles

A participle is a part of a verb used as an adjective, e.g. flying saucer (from the verb *to fly*), burnt toast (from the verb *to burn*). Participles are very common in Greek, where their use is more flexible than in English.

Present active participles
Present participles have the basic meaning of '.....-ing'. Here is the table of the present participle active of παύω, *I stop*

παύων, *stopping*

SINGULAR	**masculine**	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	παύων	παύουσα	παῦον
accusative	παύοντα	παύουσαν	παῦον
genitive	παύοντος	παυούσης	παύοντος
dative	παύοντι	παυούσῃ	παύοντι
PLURAL			
nominative	παύοντες	παύουσαι	παύοντα
accusative	παύοντας	παυούσας	παύοντα
genitive	παυόντων	παυουσῶν	παυόντων
dative	παύουσι(ν)	παυούσαις	παύουσι(ν)

To be
The present participle of εἰμί (*I am*) is ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν (*being*) – just like the table above, but without the παυ- at the beginning.

Present middle participles
These end in -ομενος and have the same endings as the adjective σοφός, *wise.*

Examples:

παύομαι	I cease	→	παυόμενος, -η, -ον	ceasing
βούλομαι	I wish	→	βουλόμενος, -η, -ον	wishing
μάχομαι	I fight	→	μαχόμενος, -η, -ον	fighting

Uses of the present participle

1. To express *when*, *as*, *while*, *since* or *because*.
   ὁ στρατιῶτης ἀπέθανε φεύγων.
   The soldier died (whilst he was/when he was/as he was) running away.

   οὐκ ἔχοντες χρήματα, μαχόμεθα.
   Since/because we don't have (not having) money, we fight.

2. ὁ, ἡ, τό + participle = he who/those who etc.
   ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκόλασε τοὺς ἐκ τῆς μάχης φεύγοντας.
   The general punished those (who were) fleeing from the battle.

   As we saw with prepositional phrases (the word for 'the' can be repeated to identify particular people:

   ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκόλασε τοὺς στρατιώτας τοὺς ἐκ τῆς μάχης φεύγοντας.
   The general punished the soldiers the-fleeing-from-the-battle-ones.
   The general punished the soldiers who were fleeing from the battle.
   (The implication being that he didn't punish those who did not flee from the battle.)

3. Used with καίπερ, *although, despite.*
   ὁ διδάσκαλος τὸν παῖδα, καίπερ σοφὸν ὄντα, κολάζει.
   The teacher punishes the boy, although he (i.e. the boy) is (= despite his being) wise.

Exercise 63.1

1. ὁ δεσπότης εἶδε τοὺς δούλους λύοντας τοὺς ἵππους.
2. οἱ στρατιῶται, ἀνδρεῖοι ὄντες, οὐκ ἔφυγον.
3. διώκουσα τὸν ἵππον, ἡ γυνὴ ἔβαλλε τὰ ὅπλα.
4. οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει μένοντες οὐκ εἶχον ὅπλα.
5. οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ τὸ στρατοπέδον φυλάσσοντες εἶδον τοὺς πολεμίους προσερχομένους.

Exercise 63.2

1. οὐ πιστεύομεν τοῖς κακοὺς λόγους λέγουσιν.
2. οἱ πολῖται ἤκουσαν τοῦ τὴν νίκην ἀγγέλλοντος.
3. οἱ παῖδες καίπερ τοῦ διδασκάλου ἀκούοντες οὐ μανθάνουσιν.
4. αἱ ἐν πολέμοις μαχόμεναι οὐ σοφαί εἰσιν.
5. εἶδομεν τοὺς πολεμίους φεύγοντας.

Vocabulary 42	
ἕπομαι, ἕψομαι, ἑσπόμην (impf. εἱπόμην)	I follow
κρύπτομαι, κρύψομαι, ἐκρυψάμην	I hide (myself)
πυνθάνομαι, πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην	I learn, find out, ask

§64 *A nocturnal spying mission.*

τῆς δὲ νυκτὸς πολίτης τις ἦλθε παρὰ τὰς τῆς πόλεως πύλας. εἶδε δὲ ἄνδρας τινὰς βαίνοντας ἀπὸ τῆς ἀκροπόλεως εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. λάθρᾳ γὰρ ἤθελε ἀκούειν τί λέγουσιν. ἐνθάδε κρύπτομενος ἤκουεν αὐτῶν δεινά τε καὶ κακὰ λεγόντων. τὴν γὰρ πόλιν διαφθείρειν ἐβούλοντο. ἐπεὶ δ᾽οὖν ὁ πολίτης ἐπύθετο ταῦτα, ἔδραμε εὐθὺς εἰς τὴν βουλὴν καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἐν τῇ βουλῇ ὄντας λαμβάνειν τὰ ὅπλα καὶ πορεύεσθαι εὐθὺς εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν. ὁ δ᾽ἔσπετο αὐτοὺς.

ἡ ἀκροπόλις = upper city

ταῦτα = these things

§65 The passive voice and 'by'

The Passive Voice

In addition to an ACTIVE and a MIDDLE, Greek has a PASSIVE voice. This is where the nominative or subject is on the receiving end of an action. Look at these comparisons:

Active verb	Passive verb
The boy is killing.	The boy is killed.
The teacher will punish the boy.	The boy will be punished by the teacher.
The men were eating the food.	The food was being eaten by the men.
The Greeks destroyed the city.	The city was destroyed by the Greeks.

Passives in Greek:

Present	**Future**
I am stopped	*I shall be stopped*
παύομαι	παυσθήσομαι
παύει	παυσθήσει /-ῃ
παύεται	παυσθήσεται
παυόμεθα	παυσθησόμεθα
παύεσθε	παυσθήσεσθε
παύονται	παυσθήσονται

Imperfect	**Aorist**
I was being stopped	*I was stopped*
ἐπαυόμην	ἐπαύσθην
ἐπαύου	ἐπαύσθης
ἐπαύετο	ἐπαύσθη
ἐπαυόμεθα	ἐπαύσθημεν
ἐπαύεσθε	ἐπαύσθητε
ἐπαύοντο	ἐπαύσθησαν

BY

After a passive verb there are two ways of expressing BY:

1. by + a person = ὑπό + genitive
   e.g. *We are prevented by the general*.
   κωλυόμεθα ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ.

2. by + a thing = a plain dative on its own
   e.g. *We are prevented by the battle.*
   κωλυόμεθα τῇ μάχῃ.

Exercise 65.1

1. διωκόμεθα ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.
2. τὰ ζῷα ἐθύετο ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
3. οὐ κωλυθήσομαι μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις.
4. οἱ νεανίαι ἐπαιδεύθησαν εὖ ὑπὸ δούλων.
5. οἱ στρατιῶται τάσσονται ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ.

Exercise 65.2

1. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἦγοντο πρὸς τὸ ὄρος ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.
2. οἱ τῶν πολεμίων ἵπποι τῷ ποταμῷ ἐκωλύθησαν.
3. δεινὰ ὅπλα παρασκευάζεται ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιώτων.
4. οἱ δοῦλοι ὑπὸ δεσπότου λυθήσονται.
5. αἱ νῆες ἐφυλάσσοντο ὑπὸ τῶν ναυτῶν.

Exercise 65.3

1. ἡ πόλις φυλάσσεται ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
2. οἱ ἵπποι πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν ὑπὸ τῶν συμμάχων ἐδιώκοντο.
3. ὁ δοῦλος ἐλύθη ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου εὐθύς.
4. οὐ κωλυθησόμεθα φεύγειν ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου.
5. ἐπιστολὴ μακρὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ ποιητοῦ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ γράφεται.

Exercise 65.4

1. The slaves were being looked after by the doctors.
2. The slave is being released by the soldiers.
3. The war will be prevented by the magistrates.
4. He has been released by his brothers.
5. The wicked war is being stopped by the goddess.

Exercise 65.5

1. The animals are being chased by the slave.
2. The camp was being guarded by the soldiers.
3. Victory is being announced to the people.
4. The guards were being harmed by the stones.
5. The sailors will not be prevented by the sea’s dangers.

§66 Some tricky aorist passives

Future passives, as in English, are not very common in Greek. Aorist passives, though, are, and some verbs have aorist passive stems you may not expect. Luckily the endings remain the same. Here is a handful of tricky ones to be aware of:

Present	Meaning	Aorist Passive	Meaning
βλάπτω	I harm	ἐβλάβην	I was harmed
γράφω	I write	ἐγράφην	I was written
διώκω	I chase	ἐδιώχθην	I was chased
λαμβάνω	I capture	ἐλήφθην	I was captured
λείπω	I leave	ἐλείφθην	I was left
παύω	I stop	ἐπαύσθην	I was stopped
πέμπω	I send	ἐπέμφθην	I was sent
σῴζω	I save	ἐσώθην	I was saved
φυλάσσω	I guard	ἐφυλάχθην	I was guarded

Exercise 66.1

1. τὰ χρήματα ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ τῶν συμμάχων.
2. οἱ πολέμιοι ἐδιώχθησαν εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν.
3. οἱ πόλεμοι ἐπαύσθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν.
4. τὰ δένδρα ἐβλάβη ὑπὸ τῶν κακῶν νεανιῶν.
5. ἐσώθημεν ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων.

Exercise 66.2

1. The enemy were saved by their allies.
2. A long letter was written by the poet.
3. Animals were caught by the young men.
4. The city was guarded by fine soldiers.
5. Letters were sent by the women to the sailors.

§67 Present participle passive

English: *being somethinged*
These are identical to the present middle participles; that is, they end in -ομενος and have the same endings as the adjective σοφός, *wise.*

Example: παυόμενος, -η, -ον *being stopped*

Study this sentence:
οἱ ἵπποι οἱ ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως παιδευόμενοι καλοί εἰσιν.
The horses – the ones being trained by the king – are beautiful.
Those horses which are being trained by the king are beautiful.

§68 Aorist participles active, middle and passive

These are very common in Greek. Practically every Greek sentence contains some sort of participle or other, and those dealing with the past are particularly worth getting to know.

Active:	παύσας, παύσαντος	*having stopped*
Middle:	παυσάμενος, -η, -ον	*having ceased*
Passive:	παυσθείς, παυσθέντος	*having been stopped*

παυσάμενος has endings like σοφός, so is straightforward.

The endings of παύσας (active) and παυσθείς (passive) are given in the following tables:

Aorist Participle Active
παύσας - *having ceased*

Singular	**masculine**	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	παύσας	παύσασα	παῦσαν
accusative	παύσαντα	παύσασαν	παύσαν
genitive	παύσαντος	παύσαντος	παύσαντος
dative	παύσαντι	παυσάσῃ	παύσαντι
Plural			
nominative	παύσαντες	παύσασαι	παύσαντα
accusative	παύσαντας	παυσάσας	παύσαντα
genitive	παυσάντων	παυσασῶν	παυσάντων
dative	παύσασι(ν)	παυσάσαις	παύσασι(ν)

Aorist Participle Passive

παυσθείς, παυσθέντος - *having been stopped*

Singular	**masculine**	**feminine**	**neuter**
nominative	παυσθείς	παυσθεῖσα	παυσθέν
accusative	παυσθέντα	παυσθεῖσαν	παυσθέν
genitive	παυσθέντος	παυσθείσης	παυσθέντος
dative	παυσθέντι	παυσθείσῃ	παυσθέντι
Plural			
nominative	παυσθέντες	παυσθεῖσαι	παυσθέντα
accusative	παυσθέντας	παυσθείσας	παυσθέντα
genitive	παυσθέντων	παυσθεισῶν	παυσθέντων
dative	παυσθεῖσι(ν)	παυσθείσαις	παυσθεῖσι(ν)

Now study carefully these examples. The aorist participles are underlined.

Aorist Active
οἱ τὸ στρατόπεδον δύο ἡμέρας φυλάξαντες οἶνον ἐβούλοντο.
Those having guarded the camp for two days wanted wine.
The men who had guarded the camp for two days wanted wine.

Aorist Middle
τὰς γυναῖκας τὰς τὰ χρήματα δεξαμένας ἐδιώκομεν.
We were chasing the women the-ones-having-received-the-money.
We were chasing the women who had received the money.

Aorist Passive
οἱ δοῦλοι ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου λυθέντες ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἔδραμον.
The slaves, having been released by the master, ran out of the city.
When the slaves had been released by the master, they ran out of the city.

Exercise 68.1

1. οἱ τοὺς πολεμίους διώξαντες σύμμαχοί εἰσιν.
2. θαυμάζομεν τὸν τοὺς παῖδας διδάξαντα.
3. ἡ θεά, τὰς βοὰς ἀκούσασα, ἄγγελον ἔπεμψεν.
4. ὁ ποιητὴς ὁ τὰ ἆθλα δεξάμενος σοφὸς ἦν.
5. τί ἐστι τὸ ὄνομα τῆς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν γραψάσης;

Exercise 68.2

1. πολλάκις διδάξας ἀεὶ μανθάνω.
2. δῶρον παρέχω τῷ τὸν δοῦλον διώξαντι.
3. αἱ τὴν κώμην φυλάξασαι ἀνδρεῖαί εἰσιν.
4. τίς ἐστιν ὁ στρατηγὸς ὁ τοὺς στρατιώτας τάξας;
5. ἆρα πιστεύεις τοῖς ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων λυθεῖσιν;

§69 Strong aorist active participles

You may remember verbs with so-called strong aorists: they are the ones which often shorten their stem and have endings which appear to be imperfects, e.g. λαμβάνω (I take, capture) becomes ἔλαβον (I took), ἔλαβες, ἔλαβε, ἐλάβομεν, ἐλάβετε, ἔλαβον.
These verbs form their strong aorist participles by removing the initial ἐ-, taking the stem, and adding the same endings as those of the present participle active, i.e. -ων, -οντος.
So:
present tense:

λαμβάνω *I take*

strong aorist:

ἔλαβον *I took*

strong aorist participle:

λάβων, λάβοντος *having taken* (masculine)
λάβουσα, λαβούσης *having taken* (feminine)
λάβον, λάβοντος *having taken* (neuter)

λάβων, λάβοντος - *having taken*

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	λάβων	λάβουσα	λάβον
	accusative	λάβοντα	λάβουσαν	λάβον
	genitive	λάβοντος	λαβούσης	λάβοντος
	dative	λάβοντι	λαβούσῃ	λάβοντι
Plural	nominative	λάβοντες	λάβουσαι	λάβοντα
	accusative	λάβοντας	λαβούσας	λάβοντα
	genitive	λαβόντων	λαβούσων	λαβόντων
	dative	λάβουσι(ν)	λαβούσαις	λάβουσι(ν)

These are common in Greek. Check out the common examples on the next page.

present	strong aorist	strong aorist participle	meaning
ἄγω	ἤγαγον	ἀγάγων	having led
ἀποθνήσκω	ἀπέθανον	ἀποθάνων	having died
βάλλω	ἔβαλον	βάλων	having thrown
ἔρχομαι	ἦλθον	ἐλθών	having come/gone
ἔχω	ἔσχον	σχών	having had/held
λαμβάνω	ἔλαβον	λάβων	having taken
λέγω	εἶπον	εἶπων	having said
λείπω	ἔλιπον	λίπων	having left
μανθάνω	ἔμαθον	μάθων	having learned
τρέχω	ἔδραμον	δράμων	having run
φεύγω	ἔφυγον	φύγων	having fled

Exercise 69.1

1. οἱ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἀποθάνοντες ἀνδρεῖοι ἦσαν.
2. οἱ δοῦλοι καίπερ δράμοντες ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου ἐλήφθησαν.
3. οἱ πολεμίοι τὴν πόλιν λάβοντες διέφθειραν αὐτὴν.
4. ὁ στρατιώτης ὁ φύγων ἐκολάσθη ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ.
5. ἡ γυνὴ σοφοὺς λόγους εἴπουσα ἀπῆλθεν.

§70 Future Participles

These are easy to form, being based on the futures active, middle or passive.

Future Active
English meaning: 'about to do / on the point of doing something'.
Formation: take the future, remove the -ω at the end and replace it with -ων. This goes like the present participle.

Examples: παύσων, παύσουσα, παύσον *about to stop*
διώξων, διώξουσα, διώξον *about to chase*

Future Middle
Formation: future stem + -ομενος (goes like σοφός)
Examples: παυσόμενος, -η, -ον *about to cease*
πορευσόμενος, -η, -ον *about to march*

Future Passive
English: *to be about to be somethinged*
Formation: future stem + -ομενος (goes like σοφός)
Examples: παυθησόμενος, -η, -ον *about to be stopped*
λυθησόμενος, -η, -ον *about to be released*

Expressing Purpose
One way of expressing purpose (*in order to...*) in Greek is to use the formula ὡς + a future participle.

Examples:
ὁ στρατηγὸς ἦλθε ὡς τοῖς θεοῖς θύσων.
The general came in order to sacrifice to the gods.

οἱ δοῦλοι ἦλθον ὡς λυσόντες τοὺς ἵππους.
The slaves came in order to release the horses.

§71 Middle verbs: strong aorist participles

Strong aorists, if you remember, have endings which are the same as the imperfect endings of 'normal' verbs.
e.g. λαμβάνω, *I take* → ἔλαβον, *I took*

Middle verbs form their strong aorist participles – *having done something* – by:
1. removing the augment (ἐ-) from the front of the strong aorist.
2. removing the -ομην from the end.
3. adding -ομενος to the stem that's left.

Example:
γίγνομαι, *I happen, become*
Strong aorist: ἐγενόμην, *I became, happened*
Stem: -γεν-
Str. Aor. Part: γενόμενος, -η, -ον, *having become, having happened*

This is an adjective, with endings the same as those of σοφός, and agrees with the subject.

Two common phrases
τὰ γενόμενα
the things having happened, is a commonly found phrase, often simply translated as *what had happened*, or *the news*, or *these events.*

ἀφικόμενος, -η, -ον
having arrived (from ἀφικνέομαι, *I arrive,* aorist: ἀφικόμην, *I arrived)* is another common occurrence, usually at the start of a sentence.

Example:
ἀφικόμενοι εἰς τὴν πόλιν, οἱ στρατιῶται ἤκουσαν τὰ γενόμενα.
Having arrived at the city, the soldiers heard what had happened.

§72 Summary of Participles. Revision.

	Active	Middle	Passive
Present	παύων *stopping*	παυόμενος ceasing	παυόμενος *being stopped*
Future	παύσων *about to stop*	παυσόμενος *about to cease*	παυσθησόμενος *about to be stopped*
Aorist	παύσας *having stopped*	παυσάμενος *having ceased*	παυσθείς *having been stopped*
Strong Aorist	λαβών *having taken*	λαβόμενος *having taken for myself*	ληφθείς *having been taken*

Time for a spot of revision, using an injection of new vocabulary.

Vocabulary 43	
αἴτιος + gen.	responsible for, guilty of
ἄξιος + gen.	worthy of
ἔτι	still, yet
ἡ ἀρχή	beginning, power, empire
ἡ τίμη	honour
ἡ συμφορά	disaster, misfortune
ὁ αἰχμάλωτος	prisoner (of war)
ὁ ἄνεμος	wind
ὁ χειμών, χειμῶνος	storm
τὸ πῦρ, πυρός	fire
τὸ ὕδωρ, ὕδατος	water
θάπτω, fut. φάψω, aor. ἔθαψα, aor. pass. ἐτάφην	I bury

Exercise 72.1

1. ἔθαψαν λάθρᾳ τὰ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων σώματα.
2. οἱ ἄνεμοι καὶ οἱ χειμῶνες αἴτιοι ἦσαν τῆς τῶν νεῶν συμφορᾶς.
3. διὰ τί οὐκ ἐθάψομεν τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως υἱὸν εὐθύς;
4. δέξαμενοι ὕδωρ καὶ οἶνον, οἱ στρατιῶται μάλιστα ἐβούλοντο μάχεσθαι.
5. οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρῖδος μαχόμενοι ἀεὶ ἄξιοι τῆς τιμῆς εἰσιν.

Exercise 72.2

1. τῷ ἀνέμῳ καὶ τῷ χειμῶνι κωλυθέντες, οἱ ναῦται οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ ἦσαν εὖ μάχεσθαι.
2. οἱ φύλακες οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει αἴτιοι τῆς αἰσχρᾶς συμφορᾶς εἰσιν.
3. ἐν πολέμῳ ἀεὶ παρέχομεν σῖτόν τε καὶ ὕδωρ τοῖς αἰχμαλώτοις.
4. ἡ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἀρχὴ ἐχθρὰ τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἦν.
5. οἱ Ἕλληνες διέφθειραν τὰ τῆς πόλεως τείχη πυρὶ καὶ ὅπλοις.

Exercise 72.3

1. In peace, sons bury (their) fathers.
2. In war, fathers bury (their) sons.
3. Good soldiers are always worthy of honour.
4. Storms and winds often destroy ships.
5. Ships are often destroyed by storms and winds.

§73 *After the Greeks finally destroy Troy, Odysseus has a difficult journey home.*

οἱ Ἕλληνες μαχεσάμενοι δέκα ἔτη ἐπὶ τὴν Τροίαν οὐκ ἔθ᾽οἷοί τ᾽ἦσαν λαμβάνειν αὐτὴν. τέλος δὲ τὴν πόλιν λάβοντες διέφθειραν. ἔπειτα δ᾽ἐπανῆλθον πρὸς τὴν πατρίδα, οὗ τὰ τέκνα καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες αὐτοὺς ἔμενον.

ἀλλὰ τῷ Ὀδυσσεῖ κωλυθέντι ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν ὁ νόστος ἦν μακρός τε καὶ χαλεπός. ὁ γὰρ τῆς θαλάσσης θεός, ὀνόματι Ποσειδῶν, τὴν ναῦν διαφθείρας τὸν Ὀδυσσέα ἠνάγκαζε νεῖν δύο ἡμέρας. τέλος δ᾽εἰς νῆσόν τινα ἀφικόμενος ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἐσώθη ὑπὸ τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως θυγατρός. μετὰ δ᾽ὀλίγας ἡμέρας καλὰ δῶρα δεξάμενος ἐν νηὶ ἀποπεμφείς, πορευσάμενος ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας καὶ ἑπτὰ νύκτας τέλος ἐπανῆλθεν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα.

Ἕλληνες = Greeks

ἔθ᾽οἷοί = ἔτι + οἷοί

ἡ πατρίς, πατρίδος = homeland
οὗ = where

ὁ νόστος = journey home

νεῖν = to swim

ὀλίγοι, -αι, -α (pl.) = a few

§74 Regular comparison of adjectives in –ος

Comparison is all about comparing things. There are three degrees of comparison. These are called *positive*, *comparative* and *superlative*.

All the adjectives we have met so far are **positive** adjectives; for example: σοφός *wise*, φίλιος *friendly*.

Comparative adjectives in English usually end in –*er* or start with *more*
e.g.: taller, smaller, more beautiful, more interesting

Superlative adjectives in English usually end in –*est* or start with *very* or *most*
e.g.: tallest, smallest, very beautiful, most beautiful

Here are some regular English examples:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
tall	taller	tallest / very tall / most tall
interesting	more interesting	very interesting / most interesting
brave	braver	bravest / very brave / most brave

There are also some irregular examples in English:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good	better (not *gooder*!)	best (not *goodest*!) / very good
bad	worse (not *badder*!)	worst (not *baddest*!) / very bad
many	more (not *manyer*!)	most (not *manyest*!) / very many

In Greek, regular comparison happens like this:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
σοφός *wise*	σοφώτερος *wiser*	σοφώτατος *wisest/very wise*
μῶρος *foolish*	μωρότερος *more foolish*	μωρότατος *very foolish*

Three things to note:

1. The linking vowel is usually ω, but when the vowel just before it is long , or a diphthong (two vowels pronounced as one), it becomes ο.
2. -τερος adjectives go like φίλιος, so their feminines are in -τερα.
3. -τατος adjectives go like σοφός, so their feminines are in -τατη.

How to express *than* in Greek
There are two ways of doing this.

1. Using ἤ, when the nouns being compared are in the same case.
   οἱ πολῖται σοφώτεροί εἰσιν ἢ οἱ θεοί.
   The citizens are wiser than the gods.

2. Using a 'genitive of comparison'.
   οἱ πολῖται σοφώτεροί εἰσι τῶν θεῶν.
   The citizens are wiser than the gods.

Vocabulary 44	
ἄλλος*, -η, -ο	other, another
ἀνά + acc.	up
γε (cannot come first in a clause)	at least, at any rate
ἱερός, -α, -ον	sacred
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν	strong
μῶρος, -α, -ον	foolish
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον	little
ὀλίγοι, -αι, -α (pl. endings)	few
πιστός, -ή, -όν	faithful, trustworthy
πλούσιος, -α, -ον	rich
ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν	high
ἄδικος, -ος**, -ον	unjust

* beware of confusing this word with ἀλλά, *but*. The acute accent on the first syllable is the giveaway.

** this adjective's feminine endings are the same as its masculine endings. A handful of adjectives behave like this.

Exercise 74.1

1. οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀνδρειότεροι ἦσαν ἢ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι.
2. οἱ πολίται πιστότεροι τῶν δούλων εἰσιν.
3. τὰ τῆς πόλεως τείχη ὑψηλότατα ἦν.
4. οἱ διδάσκαλοι πολλάκις σοφώτεροί εἰσι τῶν παίδων.
5. τίς πιστότερος ἢ κριτής ἐστιν;

Exercise 74.2

1. οἱ τῶν κριτῶν λόγοι ἀεὶ δικαιότατοί εἰσιν.
2. ὀλίγοι διδάσκαλοι πλουσιώτατοί εἰσιν.
3. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι σοφώτεροι ἦσαν τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων.
4. οἱ νεανίαι μωρότεροι ἢ οἱ κριταί εἰσιν.
5. ὁ πλουσιώτατος δεσπότης ἔχει πιστοτάτους δούλους.

Exercise 74.3

1. The road was very difficult.
2. The slave of the judge is very trustworthy.
3. The animals were more terrible than the soldiers.
4. The enemy's fleet was very strong.
5. Some men are just, others are unjust.

There are some tricky irregular comparisons not mentioned here, but we'll save them for later!

§75 Personal pronouns

		1st person		2nd person	
Singular	nominative	ἐγώ	*I*	σύ	*you*
	accusative	ἐμέ / με	*me*	σέ	*you*
	genitive	ἐμοῦ / μου	*of me/my*	σοῦ	*of you/your*
	dative	ἐμοί / μοι	*to/for me*	σοί	*to/for you*
Plural	nominative	ἡμεῖς	*we*	ὑμεῖς	*you*
	accusative	ἡμᾶς	*us*	ὑμᾶς	*you*
	genitive	ἡμῶν	*of us/our*	ὑμῶν	*of you/your*
	dative	ἡμῖν	*to/for us*	ὑμῖν	*to/for you*

The nominatives of these pronouns are used to add emphasis, or to point out a contrast.

Examples:
ἐγὼ μὲν σοφός εἰμι, σῦ δ᾽οὔ.
I am wise, but you aren't.

ἡμεῖς μὲν Ἀθηναῖοί ἐσμεν, ὑμεῖς δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι.
We are Athenians, but you are Spartans.

Exercise 75.1

1. ὁ πατὴρ παρέχει ἵππον ἐμοί.
2. ἐγὼ σοφώτερός εἰμι σοῦ.
3. ὁ δεσπότης ἡμᾶς μὲν ἐκόλασε, ὑμᾶς δ᾽οὔ.
4. ὁ κριτής μοι οὐ πιστεῦει.
5. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔπεμψέ με εἰς τὴν πόλιν.

Exercise 75.2

1. τί ἐστι τὸ ὄνομά σου;
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκέλευσε ἡμᾶς εὖ μάχεσθαι ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
3. τὸ ἔργον χαλεπώτατον ἦν ἡμῖν.
4. ὁ πλούσιος βασιλεὺς παρέξει σοι χρήματα.
5. ῥᾴδιον ἔσται ὑμῖν φυλάσσειν τὸ στρατόπεδον.

Exercise 75.3

1. The woman is wiser than you (singular).
2. The judge sent me out of the city.
3. Your (plural) father is both rich and wise.
4. The general trusts me, but not you (singular).
5. The task is difficult for me, but easy for you (singular).

§76 Aspect: infinitives

We have already met present infinitives (*to*-words, ending in -ειν), e.g. παύειν, *to stop*.

Greek verbs have several infinitives; a summary appears below.

	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	παύειν *to stop*	παύεσθαι *to cease from*	παύεσθαι *to be stopped*
Future	παύσειν *to be about to stop*	παύσεσθαι *to be about to cease from*	παυσθήσεσθαι *to be about to be stopped*
Aorist	παῦσαι *to stop*	παύσασθαι *to cease from*	παυσθῆναι *to be stopped*
Strong aorist	λαβεῖν *to take*	(rare)	(rare)

Compare the English translations of the present and aorist infinitives: you will see they are the same, so what's going on here? What's the difference?

Well, the difference is one of what's called ASPECT – the way you look at the action. There are two options:

1. The action is general and continuous:
   e.g. *I want to learn.*
   Here a **present infinitive** would be used.
2. The action is a one-off and on a specific occasion:
   e.g. *I want to learn my Greek vocabulary for a test.*
   Here an **aorist infinitive** would be used.

The Greeks were fond of making this subtle distinction. Sometimes the 'generality' or 'specificity' of an action is not clear-cut, and either a present or aorist infinitive might be used.

Examples:
μανθάνειν βούλομαι.
(Present infinitive – a general action)
I want to learn.

μαθεῖν τοὺς νέους λόγους βούλομαι.
(Aorist infinitive – a specific action)
I want to learn the new words.
(the strong aorist of μανθάνω is ἔμαθον.)

§77 Aspect: imperatives

This distinction between the general (present) and the specific (aorist) also applies to imperatives – giving an order to someone. Here is a summary table:

	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	παῦε (sg.) παύετε (pl.) *stop!*	παύου (sg.) παύεσθε (pl.) *cease!*	(rare!)
Aorist	παῦσον (sg.) παύσατε (pl.) *stop!*	παῦσαι (sg.) παύσασθε (pl.) *cease!*	(rare!)
Strong aorist	λαβέ (sg.) λάβετε (pl.) *take!*	λαβοῦ (sg.) λάβεσθε (pl.) *take for yourself!*	(rare!)

Two common but unusual imperatives are:

ἴσθι (sg.) ἔστε (pl.) *be!*
(from εἰμί *I am*)

ἐλθέ (sg.) ἔλθετε (pl.) *go!/come!*
(from ἔρχομαι *I go/come*, str. aor. ἦλθον *I went/came*)

This will often be found in compounds, beginning with:
ἀπ- *away,* εἰσ- *into,* ἐξ- *out of,* προσ- *towards,* ἐπαν- *back*

Exercise 77.1

1. ἀεὶ γράφε εὖ, ὦ ποιητά.
2. γράψον τὴν ἐπιστολὴν νῦν, ὦ ποιητά.
3. μὴ ἀποκτείνε τοὺς δούλους, ὦ δέσποτα.
4. ἀνδρεῖοι ἔστε ἐν τῷ κινδύνῳ, ὦ νεανίαι.
5. ἀκούσατέ γε τοὺς τῶν γερόντων λόγους, ὦ παῖδες.

Exercise 77.2

1. ἀεὶ πέμπετε δῶρα πρὸς τὴν μητέρα, ὦ παῖ.
2. ὦ παῖδες, πέμψατε δῶρα πρὸς τὴν μητέρα.
3. παύσον τὴν μάχην, ὦ στρατηγέ.
4. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκελεῦθη τὴν μάχην παῦσαι.
5. διώξατε τὰ ζῷα πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν, ὦ δοῦλοι.

Exercise 77.3

1. Fight well, soldier!
2. Take your weapons, friends!
3. Save the old man, boy!
4. Listen to the general's words, soldiers!
5. Send five ships up the river, general!

So, when reading Greek be aware of the subtle distinction between present and aorist infinitives and imperatives. The difference is not one of time/tense, but of aspect.

§78 *After a quarrel with Agamemnon, Achilles will not fight. He sends his best friend, Patroclus, into battle against the Trojans.*

ὁ Πάτροκλος φίλος ἦν τοῦ Ἀχιλλέως. ὁ δὲ Ἀχιλλεὺς οὐκ ἤθελεν μάχεσθαι. ἐχθρὸς γὰρ ἦν τῷ Ἀγαμέμνονι, τῷ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἡγεμόνι ὄντι. ἀλλὰ ἔπεμψε τὸν Πάτροκλον εἰς τὴν μάχην ὡς βοηθήσοντα τοῖς συμμάχοις. ἔδωκε τῷ Πατρόκλῳ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις, ‘φυλάσσετε,’ ἔφη, ‘τοῦτον καὶ φέρετε αὐτὸν ἀσφαλῶς ἐκ τῆς μάχης.’

ἀλλὰ τοὺς λόγους εἶπε μάτην. ὁ γὰρ Ἕκτωρ, ὁ τῶν Τρώων ἡγεμὼν, ἀπέκτεινε τὸν Πάτροκλον ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.

ὡς + future participle = in order to... (see p.135, bottom)

βοηθέω + dat. = I help
ἔδωκε = (he) gave
ἑαυτοῦ = his own

ἔφη = (he) said
τοῦτον = this man
ἀσφαλῶς = safely

μάτην = in vain

§79 Contracted Verbs in -εω

As you know, many Greek verbs end in -ω, such as παύω, *I stop.*

Some Greek verbs have slightly different endings because of a ε or α which comes before the final ω.These kinds of verbs are called contracted verbs. Contracted means 'shortened.'

Examples of such verbs are φιλέω, *I love*; and τιμάω, I honour.

We'll deal with -εω verbs first.

φιλέω-type verbs

With these verbs the normal endings blend with the ε to form new sounds, as follows:

ε + ω	becomes ω
ε + ο or ου	becomes ου
ε + ε or ει	becomes ει
ε + σ or κ	becomes ης or ηκ

Examples:

Present Active	**Imperfect Active**
φιλῶ	ἐφίλουν
φιλεῖς	ἐφίλεις
φιλεῖ	ἐφίλει
φιλοῦμεν	ἐφιλοῦμεν
φιλεῖτε	ἐφιλεῖτε
φιλοῦσι(ν)	ἐφίλουν

Present Middle and Passive	**Imperfect Middle and Passive**
φιλοῦμαι	ἐφιλούμην
φιλεῖ / φιλῇ	ἐφιλοῦ
φιλεῖται	ἐφιλεῖτο
φιλούμεθα	ἐφιλούμεθα
φιλεῖσθε	ἐφιλεῖσθε
φιλοῦνται	ἐφιλοῦντο

Vocabulary 45	
φιλέω	I love
ἀδικέω	I do wrong, I injure
αἰτέω	I ask, I ask for
ἀναχωρέω	I retreat, I withdraw
βοηθέω (+ dative)	I help
ζητέω	I seek
μισέω	I hate
οἰκέω	I live (in), I inhabit
ποιέω	I make, I do *(a very common verb)*
ἔφη	he/she said

Note on αἰτέω (I ask, I ask for)
When αἰτέω is used in the sense of *I ask someone for something*, it takes a double accusative. The first accusative indicates the person being asked, and the second accusative indicates what is being asked for. Study this example:

ὁ παῖς τὸν διδάσκαλον τὴν βίβλον ᾔτησεν.
The boy asked the teacher for the book.

Exercise 79.1

1. αἰτῶ σέ, ὦ παί, τί ποιεῖς;
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐφιλεῖτο ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
3. οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι οὐκ ἐφιλοῦν τοὺς Ἀθηναίους.
4. αἱ γυναῖκες ἀεὶ ζητοῦσι τὰ χρήματα.
5. τίς βοηθήσει τῷ γέροντι;

Exercise 79.2

1. διὰ τί οἱ σύμμαχοι ἀνεχώρησαν;
2. οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐμισοῦν τοὺς Ἀθηναίους.
3. ἀγαθόν ἐστι τοῖς διδασκάλοις φιλεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν παίδων.
4. μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ πολέμιοι ἠδίκησαν τὸν βασιλέα.
5. οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν στρατηγὸν τὰ χρῆματα αἰτοῦσιν.

§80 Contracted Verbs in -αω

τιμάω-type verbs

With these verbs the normal endings blend with the α to form new sounds, as follows:

α + ω or ο or ου	becomes ω
α + ε	becomes α
α + ι	becomes ᾳ
α + σ or κ	becomes ης or ηκ

Examples

Present Active	**Imperfect Active**
τιμῶ	ἐτίμων
τιμᾷς	ἐτίμας
τιμᾷ	ἐτίμα
τιμῶμεν	ἐτιμῶμεν
τιμᾶτε	ἐτιμᾶτε
τιμῶσι(ν)	ἐτίμων

Present Middle and Passive	**Imperfect Middle and Passive**
τιμῶμαι	ἐτιμώμην
τιμᾷ	ἐτιμῶ
τιμᾶται	ἐτιμᾶτο
τιμώμεθα	ἐτιμώμεθα
τιμᾶσθε	ἐτιμᾶσθε
τιμῶνται	ἐτιμῶντο

Here are some common contracted verbs:

Vocabulary 46	
τιμάω	I honour
βοάω	I shout
ἐρωτάω	I ask (a question)
νικάω	I conquer
ὁράω	I see

Notes on the vocabulary

ἐρωτάω can have either ἠρόμην or ἠρώτησα as its aorist.
So, *he asked* would be either ἤρετο or ἠρώτησε(ν).
ὁράω *I see* is, as you would expect, a very common verb. Its key tenses are:

present:	ὁράω	*I see*
future:	ὄψομαι	*I shall see**
aorist (strong):	εἶδον	*I saw*
aorist passive:	ὤφθην	*I was seen*

*for this new form of the future tense see page 153.

Exercise 80.1

1. οἱ νεανίαι πολλάκις βοῶσιν.
2. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐτιμῶν τοὺς θεούς.
3. ὁ βασιλεὺς ὁρᾷ τὰς ἐν τῇ λιμένι ναῦς.
4. αἱ νῆες ὑπὸ τοὺ βασιλέως ὁρῶνται ἐν τῷ λιμένι.
5. τιμᾶ τόν τε πατέρα καὶ τὴν μητέρα, ὦ παί.

Other tenses of verbs in -εω and -αω

The endings of these tenses are regular, but the final stem vowel is lengthened, e.g.:

φιλέω	future φιλήσω	aorist ἐφίλησα
τιμάω	future τιμήσω	aorist ἐτίμησα

(This applies to futures and aorists; active, middle and passive).

Full tables of verbs contracted in -εω and -αω can be found in the Grammar Summary, pages 232-233.

Exercise 80.2

1. ὁ καλὸς στρατηγὸς ἐτιμήθη ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
2. αἰσχρὸν τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις ἦν νικᾶσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων.
3. οἱ διδάσκαλοι οἱ σοφοὶ ἐτιμῶντο ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀθηναίων.
4. οἱ πολέμιοι ὤφθησαν ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ.
5. οὐ τιμῶμεν τοὺς μωροτάτους.

Exercise 80.3

1. εἴδομεν τοὺς πολεμίους ἀναχωροῦντες.
2. ἐβοηθοῦμεν τοῖς γέρουσι τοῖς χρήμασιν.
3. διὰ τί ὁ κακὸς κριτὴς ἠδίκησε τοὺς πολίτας;
4. ὁ νεανίας ἐθέλει τιμᾶσθαι ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως.
5. ἀεὶ τιμήσω τοὺς στρατιώτας τοὺς ἀνδρείους.

Exercise 80.4

1. μετὰ τήν μάχην οἱ σύμμαχοι ἀνεχώρησαν.
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς οὐχ ὁρᾶται ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ.
3. οἱ κριταὶ ἀεὶ τιμηθήσονται ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν.
4. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον περὶ τῆς μάχης.
5. ὁ δεσπότης ἐρωτᾷ τὸν δοῦλον τί ποιεῖ.

Another vocabulary box of priority words for learning coming up:

Vocabulary 47	
αὖθις	again
ἐκεῖ	there
καθεύδω	I sleep
εὑρίσκω, εὑρήσω, ηὗρον, ηὑρέθην	I find
ἀφικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην	I arrive
πείθομαι, πείσομαι, ἐπιθόμην + dat.	I obey
ὑπισχνέομαι, ὑποσχήσομαι, ὑπεσχόμην	I promise
πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα	I sail

How verbs are listed

In vocabulary boxes like the one above, and in listings of verbs, you will see upto four pieces of information given. These are, in order:

present active	e.g.	εὑρίσκω	*I find*
future active	e.g.	εὑρήσω	*I shall find*
aorist active	e.g.	ηὗρον	*I found*
aorist passive	e.g.	ηὑρέθην	*I was found*

§81 A note about futures

Not all verbs form their future tense by *inserting* an -σ- between the present verb stem and the present tense endings, like παύω *I stop* (future: παύσω *I shall stop*) does.

There are two common variations:

1. Some verbs have futures which have middle endings.

Examples:

ἀκούω *I hear*	future: ἀκούσομαι *I shall hear*
λαμβάνω *I take*	future: λήψομμαι *I shall take*
ὁράω *I see*	future: ὄψομαι *I shall see*

2. Some verbs have futures which take the form of contracted present tenses.

Examples:

βάλλω *I throw*	future: βαλῶ *I shall throw*
ἀποκτείνω *I kill*	future: ἀποκτενῶ *I shall kill*
λέγω *I say*	future: ἐρῶ *I shall say*
ἀγγέλλω *I announce*	future: ἀγγελῶ *I shall announce*

A giveaway clue to this sort of future is the circumflex accent (˜) over the final ω: -ῶ.

These contracted futures occur with middle verbs as well:

Examples:

μάχομαι *I fight*	future: μαχοῦμαι *I shall fight*
τρέχω *I run*	future: δραμοῦμαι *I shall run*

A giveaway clue to this sort of future is the circumflex accent just before the final -μαι.

§82 *Odysseus is dismayed by his men's treatment of Helios' (the Sun God's) cattle.*

ὁ δὲ Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ναῦται ἀφίκοντο εἰς νῆσόν τινα, ἀλλὰ ἀποπλεῦσαι οὐχ οἷοί τ᾽ ἦσαν, ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν κωλυθέντες. ἐκεῖ ηὗρον ἐν ἀγροῖς καλοῖς τοὺς τοῦ Ἡλίου βοῦς. ἐκέλευσε μὲν ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς τοὺς φίλους τὰ ζῷα μὴ ἀποκτείνειν. οἱ δέ, λιμῷ δεινοτάτῳ ἀναγκαζόμενοι, αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐπίθοντο, ἀλλὰ ἕνα βοῦν λάβοντες ἀπέκτειναν· ὁ γὰρ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἐκάθευδεν. τέλος δ᾽εἶδεν αὐτοὺς παρασκευάζοντας τὸν σῖτον.
‘ὦ ἀνδρὲς κακοί,’ ἐβόησεν, ‘τί ποιεῖτε; ἆρ᾽οὐκ ἐθέλετε ἐπανελθεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα καὶ αὖθις ὁρᾶν τὰ τέκνα καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας; αὕτη ἡ ἄνοια διαφθερεῖ ὑμᾶς.’

ὁ βοῦς, βοός = cow, ox,cattle

ὁ λιμός = hunger

αὕτη ἡ ἄνοια = this madness

§83 Possessive adjectives

	singular	plural
1st person	ἐμός, -ή, -όν *my* (*like* σοφός)	ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον *our* (*like* φίλιος)
2nd person	σός, σή, σόν *your* (*like* σοφός)	ὑμέτερος, -α, -ον *your* (*like* φίλιος)
3rd person	αὐτοῦ *his/of him* αὐτῆς *her/of her*	αὐτῶν *their/of them*
3rd person reflexive	ἑαυτοῦ *his own* ἑαυτῆς *her own*	ἑαυτῶν *their own*

Word order:
the + possessive adjective + noun

Examples:

ὁ ἐμὸς ἄδελφος	*my brother*
ἡ σὴ μήτηρ	*your mother*
οἱ ἡμέτεροι δοῦλοι	*our slaves*

Note on *his* and *their*
ὁ δεσπότης ἔλυσε τοὺς <u>αὐτοῦ</u> δούλους.
The master released his (= <u>someone else's</u>) slaves.

ὁ δεσπότης ἔλυσε τοὺς <u>ἑαυτοῦ</u> δούλους.
The master released his (<u>own</u>) slaves.

Vocabulary 48	
ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν	my
ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρα, ἡμέτερον	our
σός, σή, σόν	your (sg.)
ὑμέτερος, ὑμετέρα, ὑμέτερον	your (pl.)

Exercise 83.1

1. οἱ ἐμοὶ δοῦλοι ἀεὶ πιστοί εἰσιν.
2. ὁ σὸς ἄδελφος μῶρός ἐστιν.
3. ἀεὶ τιμῶ τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα.
4. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπέκτεινε τὸν ἑαυτοῦ υἱόν.
5. ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ σοφώτερός ἐστι τῆς σῆς μητρὸς.

Exercise 83.2

1. ὁ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ ἐστι πλουσιώτερος ἢ ὁ σός.
2. τὸ ἡμέτερον ναυτικὸν ἐνίκησε τὰς τῶν Ἀθηναίων ναῦς.
3. ὁ ἐμὸς υἱὸς εἶδε τὸν σὸν πατέρα ἐν τῇ πόλει.
4. ὁ πατὴρ ὁ ἡμέτερος ἀπέθανεν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
5. οἱ ἡμέτεροι ἡγεμόνες μῶροί τε καὶ ἄδικοί εἰσιν.

§84 *Great, big*

It's time for a blitz on adjectives. A handful are coming up: here is the first.

μέγας – great, big

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα
	vocative	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα
	accusative	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μεγά
	genitive	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου
	dative	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ
Plural	nominative	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
	vocative	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
	accusative	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα
	genitive	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
	dative	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις

Exercise 84.1

1. ἡ γυνὴ βοᾷ φωνῇ μεγάλῃ.
2. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔτασσε μεγάλην στρατιάν.
3. οἱ μῶροι ἄνθρωποι φιλοῦσι μεγάλους κινδύνους.
4. οἱ παῖδες μεγάλα δῶρα πολλάκις δέχονται.
5. ἐν τῷ μεγάλῳ πολέμῳ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι εὖ ἔπραξαν.

Exercise 84.2

1. τὸ μέγα ναυτικὸν ἐνικήθη ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμιών.
2. ἡ μεγάλη πόλις βίᾳ ἐλήφθη ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν.
3. οἱ σύμμαχοι ναῦς τε καὶ ἵππους τῷ μεγάλῳ βασιλεῖ παρέχουσιν.
4. ὁ ἡγεμὼν ὁ τῶν συμμάχων μεγάλα τε καὶ καλὰ ἔργα ἐποίησεν.
5. οὐ ῥᾴδιον ἦν τοῖς στρατιώταις διαβαίνειν τὸν μέγαν ποταμόν.

Exercise 84.3

1. Zeus was a great god.
2. The Athenians at least had a great victory.
3. We always honour great men.
4. The sailors wanted to sail in the great ship.
5. Why do great men chase great prizes?

§85 *Many* and *all*

πολύς – much (sg.), many (pl.)

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
	accusative	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
	genitive	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
	dative	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
Plural	nominative	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
	accusative	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά
	genitive	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
	dative	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς

πᾶς – all, every, whole of, entire

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
	accusative	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
	genitive	παντός	πάσης	παντός
	dative	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
Plural	nominative	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
	accusative	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα
	genitive	πάντων	πασῶν	πάντων
	dative	πᾶσι(ν)	πάσαις	πᾶσι(ν)

Notes on πᾶς

1. Word order: as English.
   πάντες οἱ ναῦται *all the sailors*

2. πάντες standing alone = *everyone*
   πάντες βοῶσιν *everyone is shouting*

3. πάντα standing alone = *everything*
   πάντα διδάσκει *he teaches everything*

Exercise 85.1

1. ἆρα πάντες κριταὶ ἀεὶ δικαῖοί εἰσιν;
2. οὐ πάντα τὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν.
3. οὐ ῥᾴδιον ἦν πᾶσι τοῖς στρατιώταις λαμβάνειν τὴν μεγάλην πόλιν ἄνευ ἵππων.
4. ὁ κακὸς δεσπότης πολλάκις ἐκόλαζε πάντας τοὺς δούλους.
5. διὰ τὴν νίκην πολλοὶ τῶν ναυτῶν ἐσώθησαν.*

*σῴζω in the passive (σῴζομαι) can mean *I get away safely*.

Exercise 85.2

1. πάντες ἐφοβοῦντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
2. οὐχ οἷός τ᾽εἰμι πάντα ποιεῖν.
3. ὀλίγοι μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων μῶροι, πολλοὶ δὲ σοφοὶ ἦσαν.
4. ὀλίγοι στρατιῶται ἔδραμον πᾶσαν τῆν ἡμέραν.
5. πάντες τιμῶμεν τοὺς νικήσαντας τοὺς πολεμίους.

Exercise 85.3

1. Not all the Athenians were very wise.
2. Many women died in the terrible war.
3. The king captured the entire city.
4. The leader will provide money for all the soldiers.
5. The general likes all beautiful women.

§86 *Sweet* and *true*

ἡδύς - sweet

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
	vocative	ἡδύ	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
	accusative	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
	genitive	ἡδέος	ἡδείας	ἡδέος
	dative	ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾳ	ἡδεῖ
Plural	nominative	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
	vocative	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
	accusative	ἡδεῖς	ἡδείας	ἡδέα
	genitive	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
	dative	ἡδέσι(ν)	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι(ν)

ἀληθής - true

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	ἀληθής	ἀληθής	ἀληθές
	vocative	ἀληθής	ἀληθής	ἀληθές
	accusative	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθές
	genitive	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς
	dative	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ
Plural	nominative	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ
	vocative	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ
	accusative	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ
	genitive	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν
	dative	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)

Note: the neuter plural: τ’ἀληθῆ = τὰ ἀληθῆ (*true things*) = *the truth*

Vocabulary 49	
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	great, big
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	much, many
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	all, every
ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδύ	sweet, pleasant
βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ	slow
εὐρύς, εὐρεῖα, εὐρύ	wide
ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ	fast
ἀληθής, ἀληθής, ἀληθές	true
ἀσθενής, ἀσθενής, ἀσθενές	weak
ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλές	safe
εὐτυχής, εὐτυχής, εὐτυχές	lucky, fortunate

Exercise 86.1

1. ἡ τῆς γυναικὸς φωνὴ ἡδεῖα ἦν.
2. αἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων νῆες ταχεῖαι ἦσαν.
3. πολλοὶ γέροντες ἀσθενεῖς εἰσιν.
4. ἆρα οἱ κριταὶ ἀεὶ τ᾽ἀληθῆ λέγουσιν;
5. ἡδύ ἐστι τιμᾶσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν τῆς πόλεως πολιτῶν.

Exercise 86.2

1. ἡ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν ὁδὸς βραδεῖά τε καὶ χαλεπὴ ἦν.
2. οἱ στρατηγοὶ οἱ εὐτυχεῖς πολλάκις μεγάλα δῶρα δέχονται.
3. ἡ στρατιὰ εὐρεῖ ποταμῷ ἐκωλύετο.
4. τὰ τῶν νεανιῶν σώματα οὐκ ἔστιν ἀσθενῆ.
5. οὐκ ἀσφαλές ἐστι διὰ τὰς τῆς πόλεως ὁδοὺς νυκτὶ ἔρχεσθαι.

Exercise 86.3

1. Old men are slow, but young men are fast.
2. In war, soldiers like a lucky leader.
3. We saw many horses on the wide road.
4. Soldiers do not trust a weak general.
5. It is always sweet for sailors to sail into a safe harbour.

Vocabulary 50	
ἄνευ + gen.	without
μέντοι	however
μόνον	only
οὗ	where
ὁ οὐρανός	sky, heaven
ὁ τόπος	place
ἡ τύχη	chance, luck
καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, ἐκλῆθην	I call
πάσχω,πείσομαι, ἔπαθον	I suffer, experience

§87 *Odysseus, missing his wife Penelope, gets away from Calypso with difficulty.*

μετὰ τὸν ἐπὶ Τροίαν μέγαν πόλεμον πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι ἡγεμόνες τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἴκαδε ναυσὶν ἐπορεύθησαν. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς οὐκ εὐτυχὴς ἦν. πολλοὺς γὰρ πόνους παθὼν καὶ πάντας τοὺς ναύτας ἀπόλεσας τύχῃ ἀφίκετο πρὸς νῆσόν τινα, οὗ θεά, Καλυψὼ καλουμένη, οἰκίαν εἶχεν.

καὶ ἠναγκάσθη ὑπὸ τῆς θεᾶς ἑπτὰ ἔτη ἐκεῖ μένειν· ἐβούλετο γὰρ Καλυψὼ αὐτῷ γαμεῖσθαι. Ὀδυσσεὺς μέντοι οὐκ ἤθελεν· τὴν γὰρ γυναῖκα Πηνελοπείαν ἔτ᾽ἐφίλει καὶ μόνον ἐβούλετο αὐτὴν αὖθις ὁρᾶν.

τέλος δ᾽ οἱ ἄλλοι θεοὶ ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ οἰκοῦντες ἐκέλευσαν τὴν Καλυψὼ αὐτὸν ἀφεῖναι. ὁ οὖν Ὀδυσσεύς, σχεδίαν μικρὰν ποιήσας, ἀνήχθη.

Τροία = Troy

οἴκαδε = (to) home

ὁ πόνος = hardship

ἀπόλεσας = having lost

γαμεῖσθαι = to marry

ἀφεῖναι = to let go
σχεδία = raft
ἀνήχθη = he set sail

§88 *This* and *that*

This (plural: *these*) and that (plural: *those*) are called demonstrative adjectives, because they demonstrate or point out something.

This (plural: *these*) indicates something near the speaker (e.g. *This book*. *These pencils*).

That (plural: *those*) indicates something at a distance from the speaker (e.g. *That book. Those pencils*).

this (plural: these)

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
	accusative	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
	genitive	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
	dative	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
Plural	nominative	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
	accusative	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα
	genitive	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
	dative	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις

Word order: οὗτος + word for *the* + noun

Examples:

οὗτος ὁ ναύτης	*This sailor*	(masculine singular)
οὗτοι οἱ ναῦται	*These sailors*	(masculine plural)
αὕτη ἡ γυνή	*This woman*	(feminine singular)
αὗται αἱ γυναῖκες	*These women*	(feminine plural)
τοῦτο τὸ δῶρον	*This gift*	(neuter singular)
ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα	*These gifts*	(neuter plural)

The nominatives can often stand alone, as pronouns:

Examples:

οὗτος πολλάκις βοᾷ.	*This (man) often shouts.*
αὗται καλαὶ ἦσαν.	*These (women) were beautiful.*

Here is another table meaning *this* (plural: *these*).

this (plural: *these*)

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε
	accusative	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε
	genitive	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε
	dative	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε
Plural	nominative	οἵδε	αἵδε	τάδε
	accusative	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε
	genitive	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
	dative	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε

Word order: ὅδε + word for *the* + noun

Examples:

ὅδε ὁ ναύτης	*This sailor*	(masculine singular)
οἵδε οἱ ναῦται	*These sailors*	(masculine plural)

Exercise 88.1

1. ὀλίγοι παῖδες τοῦτον τὸν διδάσκαλον φιλοῦσιν.
2. ὁ κριτὴς ἠδίκησε τούτους τοὺς πολίτας.
3. οὗτοι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐθέλουσι μάχεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως.
4. αὕτη ἡ πόλις ὑπὸ τῶν φυλάκων ἐφυλάσσετο.
5. οὗτος ὁ τόπος καλὸς Ἑλλὰς καλεῖται.

Exercise 88.2

1. δεξάμενος τὸ καλὸν δῶρον, οὗτος ὁ νεανίας ἀπῆλθεν.
2. οἵδε οἱ στρατιῶται εὖ ἐμαχέσαντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
3. διὰ τί οἱ νεανίαι ἐδιώκον ταῦτα τὰ ζῷα;
4. ηὗρον ταῦτα τὰ χρήματα ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ.
5. ὁ τοῦτου τοῦ γέροντος υἱὸς βασιλεὺς μέγας ἐστίν.

Exercise 88.3

1. These soldiers are not stupid.
2. The animals were running towards this river.
3. The king is providing a horse for this old man.
4. These ships of the Athenians were fast.
5. I am carrying these corpses out of the camp.

§89 *that*

that (plural: *those*)

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
	accusative	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
	genitive	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
	dative	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
Plural	nominative	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
	accusative	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα
	genitive	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
	dative	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις

Word order: ἐκεῖνος + word for *the* + noun

Examples:

ἐκεῖνος ὁ ναύτης	*That sailor*	(masculine singular)
ἐκεῖνοι οἱ ναῦται	*Those sailors*	(masculine plural)
ἐκείνη ἡ γυνή	*That woman*	(feminine singular)
ἐκεῖναι αἱ γυναῖκες	*Those women*	(feminine plural)
ἐκεῖνο τὸ δῶρον	*That gift*	(neuter singular)
ἐκεῖνα τὰ δῶρα	*Those gifts*	(neuter plural)

The nominatives can often stand alone, as pronouns:

Examples:

ἐκεῖνος πολλάκις βοᾷ.	*That (man) often shouts.*
ἐκεῖναι καλαί εἰσιν.	*Those (women) are beautiful.*

Exercise 89.1

1. ἐκεῖνον τὸν διδάσκαλον οὐ φιλῶ.
2. ὁ βασιλεὺς σῖτόν τε καὶ οἶνον ἐκείνοις τοῖς γέρουσι παρέχει.
3. ἡ ἡμετέρα πόλις ἐλήφθη ὑπὸ ἐκείνων τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
4. αὕται αἱ γυναῖκες ἐφιλοῦντο ὑπὸ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀνδρός.
5. πολλοὶ στρατιῶται ἐμαχέσαντο ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ μάχῃ.

Exercise 89.2

1. ἐκείνῃ τῇ νυκτὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔλαβον τὴν πόλιν.
2. οὗτος ὁ δεσπότης ἐκέλευσε ἐκείνους τοὺς δούλους εὖ μάχεσθαι.
3. αὗται μὲν αἱ νῆες βραδεῖαί εἰσιν, ἐκεῖναι δὲ ταχεῖαι.
4. ἐκεῖνοι οἱ ἵπποι ἀπέθανον ἐν τῇ πολέμῳ.
5. ὁ ἐκείνου τοῦ νεανίου πατήρ ἐστιν ἀσθενής.

Exercise 89.3

1. The lives of those old men were brave.
2. Many of those soldiers died.
3. We saw many fast ships (on) that day.
4. This judge is wiser than that citizen.
5. I used to hate those foolish young men.

§90 *The last stand of the general Leonidas and his Spartans at Thermopylae when surrounded by the Persians.*

καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ὁ Λεωνίδας, στρατηγὸς ὢν τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις μαχόμενος ταχέως ἀπέθανεν. οἱ δ᾽ ἄλλοι Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀνδρείως ἔτ᾽ἐμάχοντο. καὶ τέως μὲν ἐνίκων· ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς Πέρσας ἐκ τοῦ ὄπισθε ἐλθόντας εἶδον. πρόδοται γάρ τινὲς ἐδήλωσαν αὐτοῖς τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν διὰ τῶν ὀρῶν. τέλος δὲ πάντες οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀπέθανον. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες, τὸν Λεωνίδαν τιμᾶν βουλόμενοι, ἐποίησαν μεγάλην στήλην ἐν ταῖς Θερμοπύλαις.

ταχέως = quickly

ἀνδρείως = bravely

τέως = for a while

ὄπισθε = the rear
προδότης = traitor
ἐδήλωσαν = (they) showed

στήλη = monument

§91 More about comparison of adjectives

We have already met adjectives which have their comparatives in -τερος and their superlatives in -τατος; for example:

σοφός *wise,* σοφώτερος *wiser*, σοφώτατος *very wise*

There is an important group of irregular adjectives whose comparatives end in -(ι)ων and superlatives in -ιστος.
Look at this table:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
μέγας *great*	μείζων *greater*	μέγιστος *greatest/very great*
ταχύς *fast*	θάττων *faster*	τάχιστος *fastest/very fast*
αἰσχρός *shameful*	αἰσχίων *more shameful*	αἴσχιστος *very shameful*
ἐχθρός *hostile*	ἐχθίων *more hostile*	ἔχθιστος *most/very hostile*

The -ιστος superlative words go like σοφός, and the -(ι)ων comparatives go like the table below.

μείζων - *greater*

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	nominative	μείζων	μείζων	μείζον
	accusative	μείζονα	μείζονα	μείζον
	genitive	μείζονος	μείζονος	μείζονος
	dative	μείζονι	μείζονι	μείζονι
Plural	nominative	μείζονες	μείζονες	μείζονα
	accusative	μείζονας	μείζονας	μείζονα
	genitive	μειζόνων	μειζόνων	μειζόνων
	dative	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)

Here are some more irregulars. They are common, and so worth learning.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ἀγαθός *good*	ἀμείνων *better*	ἄριστος *best/very good*
κακός *bad*	κακίων *worse*	κάκιστος *worst/very bad*
καλός *beautiful*	καλλίων *more beautiful*	κάλλιστος *most/very beautiful*
ὀλίγος *small, few*	ἐλάττων *smaller, fewer*	ἐλάχιστος *smallest/fewest*
πολύς *much*	πλείων/πλέων *more*	πλεῖστος *most*
ῥᾴδιος *easy*	ῥᾴων *easier*	ῥᾷστος *easiest/very easy*

Exercise 91.1

1. οἱ τοῦ κριτοῦ λόγοι ἦσαν ἀληθέστατα.
2. οὗτος ὁ στρατηγός ἐστιν εὐτυχέστατος.
3. αἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων νῆες θάττονές εἰσι τῶν τῶν πολεμίων.
4. τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ναυτικὸν ἦν μείζον ἢ τὸ τῶν Ἀθηναίων.
5. αἴσχιστον ἔσται φεύγειν ἐκ τῆς μάχης.

Exercise 91.2

1. αἱ νῆες αἱ τάχισται οὐκ ἀεὶ ἄρισταί εἰσιν.
2. τίς ἐστι ἡ πασῶν τῶν γυναικῶν καλλίστη;
3. ἀμείνον εὐ μάχεσθαί ἐστιν ἢ φεύγειν.
4. τίς καλλίων ἐστὶ τῆς ἐμῆς μητρός;
5. ὀλίγοι μὲν ἐκεῖνον τὸν διδάσκαλον φιλοῦσιν, πλεῖστοι δὲ μισοῦσιν.

Exercise 91.3

1. Our ships are faster than your boats.
2. It is very easy to hate that teacher.
3. The Spartans were more hostile than the Athenians.
4. It is not shameful to honour a very great leader.
5. Women are better than men.

§92 Comparison of adverbs

Most adverbs end in -ως, e.g. σοφῶς, *wisely*; ἀνδρείως, *bravely.*

Formation:
The comparative adverb = the neuter singular of the comparative adjective.
The superlative adverb = the neuter plural of the superlative adjective.

Study this table:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
σοφῶς *wisely*	σοφώτερον *more wisely*	σοφώτατα *very/most wisely*
ταχέως *quickly*	θᾶττον *more quickly*	τάχιστα *very quickly*

Note also these common examples:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
εὖ *well*	ἄμεινον *better*	ἄριστα *very well / best*
μάλα *much*	μᾶλλον *more*	μάλιστα *very much*

Note also the idiom:

ὡς + superlative = as.... as possible
Example: ὡς τάχιστα *as quickly as possible*

Exercise 92.1

1. τὴν ἐμὴν μητέρα μάλιστα φιλῶ.
2. οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀεὶ ταχέως ἄνευ ὅπλων τρέχουσιν.
3. ἐκεῖνος ὁ κριτὴς λέγει σοφώτερον ἢ οὗτος.
4. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι μάλιστα ἐμισοῦν τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους.
5. πάντες τιμῶμεν τὴν εἰρήνην μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν πόλεμον.

Exercise 92.2

1. οἱ ἄριστα μαχόμενοι ἀεὶ τιμῶνται ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν.
2. νικήσομεν τοῦς βαρβάρους ῥᾴον ἢ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους.
3. μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἤθελον ἐπανελθεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα ὡς τάχιστα.
4. ἐκεῖνος ὁ διδάσκαλος ἀμείνον διδάσκει τούτου.
5. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐμαχοῦντο κακίον ἢ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι.

Exercise 92.3

1. Those soldiers ran very quickly.
2. That poet writes better than I.
3. The Greeks very much liked very beautiful temples.
4. The Athenians used to fight very well, but the Spartans used to fight better.
5. The horses of the enemy ran more quickly than those of our allies.

§93 Reflexive pronouns

These are pronouns which reflect or 'bend back' the action to the subject. The object of the verb is the same as the subject.

Examples:

That boy hurt *himself* with a knife.
That girl is always looking at *herself* in the mirror.
The soldiers always used to praise *themselves*.

1st person reflexive pronoun

(Note: by definition reflexive pronouns do not have nominative or vocative cases).

myself, pl: ourselves

		masculine	feminine
Singular	accusative	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν
	genitive	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς
	dative	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ
Plural	accusative	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς
	genitive	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
	dative	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς

2nd person reflexive pronoun

yourself, pl: yourselves

		masculine	feminine
Singular	accusative	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
	genitive	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
	dative	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
Plural	accusative	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς
	genitive	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
	dative	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς

3rd person reflexive pronoun

himself/herself/itself/themselves

		masculine	feminine	neuter
Singular	accusative	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό
	genitive	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ
	dative	ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ
Plural	accusative	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά
	genitive	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
	dative	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυτοῖς

Exercise 93.1

1. διὰ τί σεαυτὸν βλάπτεις;
2. ἑαυτὸν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐβλαπτεν.
3. ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς σῖτον φέρομεν.
4. πολλοὶ σοφοὶ ἑαυτοὺς φιλοῦσιν.
5. σώσατε ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς, ὦ γέροντες.

Exercise 93.2

1. οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ ἑαυτὸν βλάπτει.
2. ἐκεῖνος ὁ στρατιωτὴς ἑαυτὸν ξίφει ἔβλαψεν.
3. ἐκεῖνη ἡ γυνὴ πολλάκις ἑαυτὴν ὁρᾷ.
4. οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι πολῖται ἑαυτοὺς ἀπέκτειναν ἐν τῇ πόλει.
5. πολλάκις ἐμαυτὸν ἐρωτῶ διὰ τῖ σοφώτατός εἰμι.

Exercise 93.3

1. We are providing the wine for ourselves.
2. That teacher loves himself.
3. The brave soldier killed himself for his country.
4. Beautiful women often look at themselves.
5. The horses harmed themselves in the river.

§94 Relative Clauses

Relative Clauses in English

These are clauses introduced by a relative pronoun (*who, whom, which etc.*). They RELATE to the person or thing mentioned just before. What they relate to is called the ANTECEDENT.

English Examples

Antecedent	Relative Pronoun and Relative Clause	Main Clause
The boy,	**who** was naughty,	was expelled from school.
That girl,	**whom/that** I love,	is very pretty.
The man,	**to whom** I gave the money,	was a beggar.
The temple,	**which** was huge,	was destroyed.

As you will see, the relative pronoun and its clause – which simply gives further information about the antecedent – could be removed from the sentence entirely: what is left still makes perfect sense:
The boy was expelled from school
That girl is very pretty.
The man was a beggar.
The temple was destroyed.

Relative Clauses in Greek

Rule

In Greek the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender (masculine/feminine/neuter) and number (singular/plural). Its case is decided by its function in the relative clause.

Here is the relative pronoun in Greek:

Relative pronoun: *who(m), what, which*

		m.	f.	n.	*English*
Singular	nominative	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	*who, which*
	accusative	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ	*whom, which*
	genitive	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ	*of whom, whose, of which*
	dative	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ	*to/for whom, which*
Plural	nominative	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ	*who , which*
	accusative	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ	*whom, which*
	genitive	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν	*of whom, whose, of which*
	dative	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς	*to/for whom, which*

Study the examples below carefully. In English the relative pronoun is sometimes left out (e.g. *The football I bought yesterday = The football which/that I bought yesterday*). You will also find that the word *whom* is dropping out of English these days, because most people do not know the difference between *who* and *whom* – so they use *who* for everything.

Examples:

nominative
ὁ ἀνὴρ ὅς ἔφευγε στρατηγὸς ἦν.
The man who was fleeing was a soldier.

ἡ γυνὴ ἥ ἔφευγε ἡ ἐμὴ θυγάτηρ ἦν.
The woman who was fleeing was my daughter.

accusative
ὁ ἀνὴρ ὅν φιλῶ πλούσιός ἐστιν.
The man (whom/that) I love is rich.

ἡ γυνὴ ἥν φιλῶ πλουσία ἐστίν.
The woman (whom/that) I love is rich.

οἱ δοῦλοι οὕς κολάζω κακοί εἰσιν.
The slaves (whom/that) I am punishing are wicked.

αἱ γυναῖκες ἅς βλέπω καλαί εἰσιν.
The women (whom/that) I am looking at are beautiful.

genitive
οὗτος ἐστὶν ὁ παῖς οὗ ὁ πατὴρ βασιλεύς ἐστιν.
This is the boy whose father is king.

τίς ἐστιν ἡ παῖς ἧς τὴν φωνὴν ἀκούω;
Who is the girl whose voice I can hear?

dative
ἐκεῖνοί εἰσιν οἱ στρατιῶται οἷς ὁ στρατηγὸς ὅπλα παρέχει.
Those are the soldiers for whom the general is providing weapons.

Exercise 94.1

1. αἱ νῆες ἃς οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐποιοῦν μέγισται ἦσαν.
2. αὕτη ἐστιν ἡ βίβλος ἣν ἔγραψε ὁ ποιητής.
3. ἐκεῖνός ἐστιν ὁ στρατηγὸς ὃν οἱ στρατιῶται φιλοῦσιν.
4. οἱ λόγοι οὓς ὁ κριτὴς εἶπεν ἀληθεῖς τε καὶ δικαῖοι ἦσαν.
5. τὰ ζῷα ἃ ἐδιώκομεν μεγάλα ἦν.

Exercise 94.2

1. ἐφίλουν τὸ δῶρον ὅ ἐδεξάμην.
2. ἐκεῖνοί εἰσιν οἱ νεανίαι οἷς ὁ δεσπότης ὅπλα παρέξει.
3. δοῦλον ἔχω οὗ ἡ φωνὴ μεγάλη ἐστίν.
4. οὗτος ὁ δοῦλος ἀεὶ ποιεῖ ἃ ὁ δεσπότης κελεύει.
5. αἱ νῆες ἃς ἔλαβον οἱ πολέμιοι τάχισται ἦσαν.

Exercise 94.3

1. The book which I am writing will be long.
2. This is the boy whose father I saw.
3. The women who were running away were very fast.
4. The camp in which we are staying is big.
5. I prepared wine for the old men who were sleeping in the temple.

§95 *With the help of Ariadne, daughter of King Minos of Crete, Theseus kills the Minotaur and escapes from the labyrinth.*

πάλαι = formerly, in the past, long ago

ἡ κόρη = young girl
ἡ βορά = food, meat

πολεμέω = I wage war

παρά + gen. = from

ὁ λαβύρινθος = labyrinth
ἡ ἔξοδος = way out

πάλαι ὁ Μίνως ἐκέλευσε τοὺς Ἀθηναίους παρέχειν ἑπτὰ νεανίας καὶ ἑπτὰ κόρας ὡς βορὰν τῷ Μινωταύρῳ.

ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Μίνως ἐπαύσατο πολεμῶν τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις. ἀλλὰ μετὰ δὲ ὀλίγα ἔτη αὖθις ἦλθεν μετὰ μεγίστου στρατοῦ. αὖθις δὲ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς πέμπειν κόρας καὶ νεανίας, ἐν οἷς ἦν ὁ Θησεύς, ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως υἱός.

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔπλευσαν εἰς τὴν νῆσον Κρήτην, Ἀριάδνη, ἡ τοῦ Μίνωος θυγάτηρ, τὸν Θησέα ἐφίλησεν· κάλλιστος γὰρ νεανίας ἦν. ὁ οὖν Θησεὺς, παρὰ αὐτῆς τὴν τοῦ λαβυρίνθου ἔξοδον μαθών, ἀπέκτεινε τὸν Μινώταυρον καὶ ἐσώθη.

§96 Verbs in -μι. Consolidation.

There is a family of verbs in Greek whose present tenses, instead of ending in -ω or -ομαι, end in -μι, like εἰμί, *I am.*

You will come across these verbs if you continue further with your Greek, but for the moment all you need to be aware of are the future and aorist tenses of the verb δίδωμι, *I give.* (The present tense is given here for the sake of completeness).

δίδωμι – *I give*		
Present *I give*	**Future** *I shall give*	**Aorist** *I gave*
δίδωμι	δώσω	ἔδωκα
δίδως	δώσεις	ἔδωκας
δίδωσι(ν)	δώσει	ἔδωκε(ν)
δίδομεν	δώσομεν	ἔδομεν
δίδοτε	δώσετε	ἔδοτε
διδόασι(ν)	δώσουσι(ν)	ἔδωκαν
	Infinitives	
	present	διδόναι
	future	δώσειν
	aorist	δοῦναι

Exercise 96.1

1. εἴδομεν αὐτοὺς φεύγοντας.
2. ὁ τοῦ πολέμου κίνδυνος μέγιστος νῦν ἐστιν.
3. τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν τρέχοντες;
4. οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ φεύγοντες ἵππον τινὰ ηὗρον.
5. ἆρα τὸν δοῦλον ἔλυσας αὐτός, ὦ γέρον;

Exercise 96.2

1. ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐπιστολὴν γράφων τὸν ἄγγελον εἶδεν.
2. ἡ θάλασσα, χαλεπὴ οὖσα, ἐκώλυσε τὸν ἄγγελον.
3. τρεῖς ἡμέρας ἐμένομεν, ἀλλὰ τῇ τετάρτῃ ἐφύγομεν.
4. ὁ δοῦλος λύσας τὸν ἵππον πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν προσέδραμεν.
5. τίς ἔδωκε τὰ χρήματα ἐκείνῳ τῷ γέροντι;

§97 Impersonal verbs.

These are verbs which exist only in the third person singular, and have as their subject the word *it*. An English example is: *It is raining.*

Four common Greek impersonal verbs are:

δεῖ (+ acc. of person + infinitive) (imperf: ἔδει)
= *It is compulsory that someone does something.*
= *Someone has to/must do something.*

χρή (+ acc. of person + infinitive) (imperf: χρῆν)
= *It is necessary that someone does something.*
= *Someone ought to do something.*

ἔξεστι (+ dat. of person + infinitive)
= *It is permitted/allowed for someone to do something.*
= *Someone can do something.*

δοκεῖ (+ dat. of person + infinitive) (aor: ἔδοξε)
= *It seems good to someone to do something.*
= *Someone decides to do something.*

Note on infinitives
The infinitive will be determined by the ASPECT of the action.

Remember Aspect?

Reminder: a general, continuous situation = **present** infinitive
a specific, one-off situation = **aorist** infinitive

The chances are that in your reading most of the infinitives you meet with impersonal verbs will relate to a specific occasion, and will therefore be aorist infinitives.

Examples:

δεῖ (+ acc. of person + infinitive)

δεῖ πάντας μανθάνειν.
(present infinitive: a general statement)
= *It is compulsory that everyone learns.*
= *Everyone has to learn.*

δεῖ πάντας μαθεῖν τούτους τοὺς λόγους.
(aorist infinitive: a particular occasion)
= *It is compulsory that everyone learns these words.*
= *Everyone has to learn these words.*

χρή (+ acc. of person + infinitive) (imperf: χρῆν)

χρὴ τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς στρατιώτας εὖ μάχεσθαι.
= *It is necessary that good soldiers fight well.*
= *Good soldiers ought to fight well.*

ἔξεστι (+ dat. of person + infinitive) (imperf: ἐξῆν)

ἔξεστι τοῖς στρατιώταις μάχεσθαι.
= *It is permitted for soldiers to fight.*
= *Soldiers can fight.*

δοκεῖ (+ dat. of person + infinitive) (aor: ἔδοξε)

ἔδοξέ μοι εὐθὺς φυγεῖν.
= *It seemed good for me to flee immediately.*
= *I decided to flee immediately.*

Exercise 97.1

1. δεῖ ἡμᾶς φυγεῖν.
2. χρὴ πάντας παῖδας τοὺς πατέρας τιμᾶν.
3. ἔδοξε τῷ στρατηγῷ τῇ πόλει εὐθὺς προσβαλεῖν.
4. οὐκ ἔξην τοῖς στρατιώταις τοῖς αἰχμαλώτοις βοηθεῖν.
5. ἔδοξε τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ὅπλα λαβεῖν.

Exercise 97.2

1. χρὴ τοὺς παῖδας ἀεὶ τ᾽ἀληθῆ λέγειν.
2. ἔδοξε τῷ στρατηγῷ ἄγγελον πέμψαι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.
3. δεῖ ἀγαθὸν ἡγεμόνα χρήματα τοῖς φίλοις παρέχειν.
4. οὐκ ἔξεστι τοῖς διδασκάλοις κακὰ ποιεῖν.
5. ἀεὶ χρὴ τοὺς βασιλέας εὖ πράσσειν.

Exercise 97.3

1. Soldiers are not allowed to do this.
2. Everyone ought to help old men.
3. We decided to travel to the city.
4. Generals ought to be worthy of honour.
5. The Athenians had to capture the city immediately.

Vocabulary 51	
δεῖ (+ acc. + infin.)	it is compulsory/must
χρή (+ acc. + infin.)	it is necessary/ought
ἔξεστι (+ dat. + infin.)	it is permitted/can
δοκεῖ (+ dat. + infin.)	it seems good/decide
ἄρχω (+ gen.)	I rule
γελάω, γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα	I laugh (at)
δακρύω, δακρῦσω, ἐδάκρυσα	I cry
δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα	I give
πάλαι	formerly, in the past, long ago
πειράομαι, πειράσομαι	I try

§98 *Two brothers fight over who shall rule Thebes. Their sister tries to do her duty to the one who is dishonoured.*

ὁ δὲ τῶν Θηβαίων βασιλεύς, γέρων ὤν, ἀπέθανε, καὶ ἑκάτερος τῶν υἱῶν ἤθελεν ἄρχειν. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἄρχειν ἐφεξῆς. Ἐτεόκλης δέ, ὃς πρῶτος ἦρχε, οὐκ ἤθελε τῷ χρόνῳ ῥητῷ παραδοῦναι τὴν ἀρχὴν τῷ ἀδελφῷ, Πολυνείκει ὀνόματι. οὗτος οὖν, συλλέξας στρατιώτας ἀπὸ ἄλλων χωρῶν, προσέβαλε τῇ πόλει. ἐν τῇ μάχῃ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἀλλήλους ἀπέκτειναν. ὁ μὲν Ἐτεόκλης, ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀγαθός, πολλῇ τιμῇ ἐτάφη· ὁ δὲ Πολυνείκης, ὁ προδότης, ἐλείφθη ἄθαπτος. ἀλλὰ ἡ ἀδελφὴ ἀνδρείως ἐπειρᾶτο θάπτειν αὐτόν. διὰ δὲ τοῦτο κατεγνώσθη θάνατον.

ἑκάτερος = each

ἐφεξῆς = one after the other, in order

ῥητός = said, agreed
παραδοῦναι = to hand over

ἀλλήλους = each other

ἐτάφη is from θάπτω

προδότης = traitor
ἐλείφθη is from λείπω
ἄθαπτος = unburied
ἡ ἀδελφή = sister

κατεγνώσθη = was condemned to

§99 The genitive absolute

This construction consists of a noun in the genitive with a participle agreeing with it. It is usually found at the beginning of a sentence, and describes a set of circumstances which are grammatically 'detached from' (that's what the *absolute* means) the main sentence. The English translation varies according to context, but *when*, *as*, *after*, *because* or even *although* will all be possibilities.

Examples:
τοῦ στρατηγοῦ κελεύοντος, τῇ πόλει προσβάλλομεν.
As the general orders, we are attacking the city.
Because/Since the general is ordering us, we are attacking the city.

τοῦ ἡγεμόνος ἀποθανόντος, οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφυγον.
When/since/their leader had died, the soldiers fled.

τῶν πολεμίων νικηθέντων, ἀπήλθομεν.
When/As the enemy had been conquered, we departed.

Exercise 99.1

1. τῶν συμμάχων ὀλίγων ὄντων, οὐκ ἐνικήσαμεν.
2. τῶν ἵππων λυθέντων, ὁ δεσπότης ἐκόλαζε τοὺς δούλους.
3. ἐμοῦ ἀποθανόντος, οἱ μὲν γελάσονται, οἱ δὲ δακρύσουσιν.
4. τούτου τοῦ βασιλέως ἄρχοντος, οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἔπρασσον εὖ.
5. τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει ὄντων, οἱ γέροντες ἀσφαλεῖς ἦσαν.

Exercise 99.2

1. τῶν στρατιωτῶν νικησάντων, πάντες οἱ πολῖται ἐγέλασαν.
2. τοῦ ναυτικοῦ ἀφικομένου, ὁ χειμῶν ἐπαύσατο.
3. τῆς γυναικὸς ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἀποθανούσης, ὁ γέρων ἑαυτὸν ἀπέκτεινεν.
4. τῆς νυκτὸς γενομένης, οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξέφυγον.
5. τῶν πολεμίων οὐ κωλυόντων, τὴν πόλιν ἐλάβομεν.

Exercise 99.3

1. When the horse had been set free, the slave fled.
2. Since the allies had arrived, we were not in danger.
3. Although the river was difficult, the sailors wanted to cross.
4. When the enemy had been conquered, the city was safe.
5. After all the prizes had been received, the judges left.

§100 *Odysseus learns from Eurylochus what the witch Circe has done to his men, and confronts her.*

καὶ ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς, μίαν μόνον ναῦν ἔχων, εἰς νῆσον τινα ἀφίκετο. ταύτην ᾤκει Κίρκη, θυγάτηρ Ἡλίου, πάντων ἔμπειρος οὖσα φαρμάκων. αὐτὸς μὲν ἔμενε παρὰ τῇ νηί, Εὐρύλοχος δὲ ἐπορεύθη μετ᾽ ἄλλων ναυτῶν πρὸς τὴν τῆς Κίρκης οἰκίαν. καλούσης δὲ αὐτῆς πλὴν Εὐρυλόχου πάντες εἰσῆλθον. ἡ δ᾽ ἑκάστῳ σῖτόν τε καὶ οἶνον ἔδωκε, μίξασα φαρμάκῳ. πιόντων δ᾽ αὐτῶν, ἔθαψας ῥάβδῳ τοὺς μὲν ἐποιήσε λύκους, τοὺς δὲ σῦς, τοὺς δὲ λέοντας. Εὐρύλοχος δὲ ἰδὼν ταῦτα Ὀδυσσεῖ ἤγγειλεν. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν μῶλυ παρὰ τῶν θεῶν πρὸς Κίρκην προσῆλθεν, καὶ βαλὼν εἰς τὰ φάρμακα τὸ μῶλυ μόνος πινὼν οὐκ ἐφαρμάχθη. σπασάμενος δὲ τὸ ξίφος ἤθελε μὲν Κίρκην ἀποκτεῖναι, ἡ δὲ ὀργὴν παύσασα τοὺς αὐτοῦ φίλους ἀποκατέστησεν.

οἰκέω = I inhabit
ἔμπειρος + gen. = experienced in
τὸ φάρμακον = drug, medicine

μείγνυμι = I mix

ἐφάπτομαι = I touch
ὁ ῥάβδος = magic wand
ὁ λύκος = wolf
ὁ σῦς = swine
ὁ λέων, λέοντος = lion

τὸ μῶλυ = moly (a magical plant)

φαρμάσσω = I bewitch
σπάω = I draw (a sword)

ἀποκαθίστημι = I restore

Vocabulary 52	
πίνω, πίομαι, ἔπιον, ἐπόθην	I drink
πλήν + gen.	except

§101 Purpose Clauses: the subjunctive

These express someone's purpose in doing something. In English, they are introduced by words like: *in order to..., to..., so as to..., so that...*

Examples:

Main Clause	Purpose Clause
He drank lots of beer	**in order to** get drunk quickly.
The cat came to London	**to** visit the queen.
The pupil said he was ill	**so as to** avoid having to work.
The boy flattered the teacher	**so that** he would be rewarded.

(Negative purpose clauses are introduced by words like *in order not to..., so as not to..., lest...*)

Examples:

Main Clause	Purpose Clause
He works hard	in order not to be expelled.
The pupil hid	so as not to be seen by the teacher.
The girls worked hard	lest they be punished.

In Greek, purpose clauses are introduced by ἵνα or ὅπως, *in order to...*

Negative purpose clauses are introduced by ἵνα μή or ὅπως μή, *in order not to...*

The verb in the purpose clause usually goes into a new form called **the subjunctive.**

The Subjunctive

Here are the main forms of the subjunctive you are likely to meet for the moment. The endings should be familiar from elsewhere, and a distinctive feature of the subjunctive is the lengthening of vowels from the equivalent indicative ('normal') form. You will see also that iotas become subscript. A study of how the present tense changes will make things clearer:

Present indicative			**Present subjunctive**
παύω	ω already long, so can't be lengthened further!	→	παύω
παύεις	ε lengthened to η, ι becomes subscript	→	παύῃς
παύει	ε lengthened to η, ι becomes subscript	→	παύῃ
παύομεν	ο lengthened to ω	→	παύωμεν
παύετε	ε lengthened to η	→	παύητε
παύουσι(ν)	ου lengthened to ω	→	παύωσι(ν)

Here is a table of the key subjunctives you will need to recognise.

	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**	**εἰμί**
Present	παύω	παύωμαι	παύωμαι	ὦ
	παύῃς	παύῃ	παύῃ	ᾖς
	παύῃ	παύηται	παύηται	ᾖ
	παύωμεν	παυώμεθα	παυώμεθα	ὦμεν
	παύητε	παύησθε	παύησθε	ἦτε
	παύωσι(ν)	παύωνται	παύωνται	ὦσι(ν)
Aorist	παύσω	παύσωμαι	παυσθῶ	
	παύσῃς/παύσαις	παύσῃ	παυσθῇς	
	παύσῃ/παύσαι	παύσηται	παυσθῇ	
	παύσωμεν	παυσώμεθα	παυσθῶμεν	
	παύσητε	παύσησθε	παυσθῆτε	
	παύσωσι(ν)	παύσωνται	παυσθῶσι(ν)	

Aspect again

When it comes to the subjunctive, the terms 'present' and 'aorist' are indicators not of time, as you would expect, but of 'aspect', which you have met before.

The present is used to refer to general, continuous actions; the aorist is used to refer to more specific, individual actions. There will be cases of possible overlap, where either could arguably be used.

Examples:
μαχόμεθα ἵνα/ὅπως <u>νικῶμεν</u>.
(present subjunctive - general)
We fight in order to conquer.

μαχόμεθα ἵνα/ὅπως <u>νικήσωμεν</u> τοὺς πολεμίους ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ.
(aorist subjunctive - specific)
We are fighting in order to conquer the enemy in this battle.

Exercise 101.1

1. οἱ νεανίαι ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἵνα τῶν γερόντων ἀκούσωσιν.
2. ἀεὶ δῶρα φέρομεν ἵνα τοῖς θεοῖς θύωμεν.
3. ὁ νεανίας ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ λέγει ἵνα πείσῃ τοὺς
4. οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τοὺς νεανίας παιδεύουσι ὅπως ἰσχυροὶ ὦσιν.
5. ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀφίκετο εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἵνα τοὺς τῶν σοφῶν λόγους ἀκούσῃ.

Exercise 101.2

1. πάντες οἱ δοῦλοι τρέχουσιν ἵνα μὴ ὑπὸ τοὺ δεσπότου ληφθῶσιν.
2. οὗτοι οἱ παῖδες ἀεὶ εὖ λέγουσιν ὅπως τὸν πατέρα πείθωσιν.
3. ἀγαθοὺς διδασκάλους ἔχομεν ἵνα σοφοὶ γιγνώμεθα.
4. οἱ νεανίαι τὰ ζῷα ἐδίωξαν ἵνα αὐτὰ λαβῶσιν.
5. ὁ στρατιώτης ὁ αἰσχρὸς φεύγει ἵνα μὴ ὑπὸ στρατηγοὺ κολάσθῃ.

Exercise 101.3

1. We send gifts in order to honour the gods.
2. The enemy are attacking the city in order to capture it.
3. I am fleeing so that the teacher does not find me.
4. That teacher has many books in order to be wise.
5. The soldiers arrived in the camp to listen to the general.

§102 Purpose clauses in the past: the optative

When the verb of the sentence introducing the purpose clause is in the past, sometimes, instead of the subjunctive, a form of the verb called the optative is used.

Here are the main forms of the optative you are likely to meet for the moment. The endings should be familiar from elsewhere, and an optative is easily spottable because of the ι which appears towards the end.

The Optative

	Active	Middle	Passive	εἰμί- to be
Present	παύοιμι	παυοίμην	παυοίμην	εἴην
	παύοις	παύοιο	παύοιο	εἴης
	παύοι	παύοιτο	παύοιτο	εἴη
	παύοιμεν	παυοίμεθα	παυοίμεθα	εἶμεν
	παύοιτε	παύοισθε	παύοισθε	εἶτε
	παύοιεν	παύοιντο	παύοιντο	εἶεν
Aorist	παύσαιμι	παυσαίμην	παυσθείην	
	παύσειας/παύσαις	παύσαιο	παυσθείης	
	παύσειε(ν)/παῦσαι	παύσαιτο	παυσθείη	
	παύσαιμεν	παυσαίμεθα	παυσθεῖμεν	
	παύσαιτε	παύσαισθε	παυσθεῖτε	
	παύσειαν	παύσαιντο	παυσθεῖεν	

Reminder about Aspect
a general, continuous situation = **present** optative
a specific, one-off situation = **aorist** optative

Verbs with strong aorists behave like this:

	Active	Middle	Passive
Present	λαμβάνοιμι	λαμβανοίμην	λαμβανοίμην
	λαμβάνοις	λαμβάνοιο	λαμβάνοιο
	λαμβάνοι	λαμβάνοιτο	λαμβάνοιτο
	λαμβάνοιμεν	λαμβανόιμεθα	λαμβανοίμεθα
	λαμβάνοιτε	λαμβάνοισθε	λαμβάνοισθε
	λαμβάνοιεν	λαμβάνοιντο	λαμβάνοιντο
Aorist	λάβοιμι	λαβοίμην	ληφθείην
	λάβοις	λάβοιο	ληφθείης
	λάβοι	λάβοιτο	ληφθείη
	λάβοιμεν	λαβοίμεθα	ληφθεῖμεν
	λάβοιτε	λάβοισθε	ληφθεῖτε
	λάβοιεν	λάβοιντο	ληφθεῖεν

Exercise 102.1

1. πάντες ἔδραμον ἵνα ὡς τάχιστα ἀφίκοιντο.
2. ἐφυλάσσομεν τὸν δοῦλον ἵνα μὴ φύγοι.
3. οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ πολλὰ καὶ κακὰ ἐποίησε ὅπως πλούσιος γένοιτο.
4. ἔδει τοὺς στρατιώτας εὖ μάχεσθαι ἵνα οἱ πολεμίοι μὴ προσβάλοιεν.
5. οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνδρειότατα ἐμαχέσαντο ἵνα μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ληφθεῖεν.

§103 Consecutive (result) clauses

These indicate consequences – something which happens as a result of something else. In English the fact that a consecutive clause is coming up is signalled by 'early warning words' like *so* or *such*. The consecutive clause itself is introduced by the word *that...,* with the meaning *with the result that...*

Examples:

He is **so** stupid **that** he does not know any Greek.
She was **such** a good runner **that** she won lots of prizes.

Early warning words in Greek

οὕτω(ς)	*so* (+ adjective/adverb/verb)
τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο	*such, of such a kind* (+ noun)
τοσοῦτος,τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο	*so big, so great, so many* (pl.)
εἰς τοσοῦτον	*to such an extent* (+ verb)

That.../with the result that...
ὥστε...

Note 1
The verb in the consecutive clause goes into the infinitive (negative: μή)

Example:
ὁ ἀνὴρ οὕτως ἀνδρεῖός ἐστιν ὥστε ἀεὶ εὖ μάχεσθαι.
The man is so brave that he always fights well.

Note 2
If the subject of the consecutive clause is different from the subject of the main clause, it goes into the accusative case.

Example*:*
ὁ ἀνὴρ οὕτως ἀνδρεῖός ἐστιν ὥστε πάντας θαυμάζειν.
The man is so brave that everyone is amazed.

Note 3
If there is particular stress on the fact that the consequence actually happened, the verb goes into the indicative (negative: οὐ).

Example:
οἱ σύμμαχοι οὕτως ἀνδρείως ἐμάχοντο ὥστε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔφυγον.
The allies fought so bravely that the enemy (actually) fled.

Vocabulary 53	
οὕτω(ς)	so (+ adjective/adverb/verb)
τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο	such, of such a kind (+ noun)
τοσοῦτος,τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο	so big, so great, so many (pl.)
εἰς τοσοῦτον	to such an extent (+ verb)
ὥστε...	that.../with the result that...
ὀργίζομαι, ὀργιοῦμαι, ὠργίσθην (+ dat.)	I get angry (with)

Exercise 103.1

1. τοσαῦτα ἦν τὰ τῆς πόλεως τειχὴ ὥστε τοῦς Ἕλληνας μὴ οἱούς τ᾽εἶναι λαβεῖν αὐτὴν.
2. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι οὕτως ἀνδρείως μάχονται ὥστε ἀεὶ τοῦς πολεμίους νικῶσιν.
3. οἱ Ἕλληνες τοσούτους στρατιώτας εἶχον ὥστε ῥᾳδίως ἔλαβον τὴν πόλιν.
4. οἱ γέροντες οὕτως ἀσθενεῖς εἰσιν ὥστε βραδέως τρέχειν.
5. ἐκεῖνος ὁ δοῦλος οὕτω κακὸς ἦν ὥστε τὸν δεσπότην ἐξέβαλεν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς οἰκῖας.

Exercise 103.2

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς ὁ ἡμέτερος οὕτως ἀνδρεῖός ἐστιν ὥστε ὑπὸ πάντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν τιμᾶσθαι.
2. τοσαύτη ἦν ἡ τοῦ γέροντος σοφία ὥστε πάντας τοῦς παῖδας αὐτοῦ ἀκοῦειν βούλεσθαι.
3. ὁ ἡγεμὼν οὕτως εὐτυχής ἐστιν ὥστε πάντας τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτὸν μάλιστα φιλεῖν.
4. αἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων νῆες οὕτω ταχεῖαι ἦσαν ὥστε ἐκ τοῦ κινδύνου ἐξέφυγον.
5. ἐκείνη ἡ γυνὴ οὕτω καλή ἐστιν ὥστε πάντας τοὺς νεανίας πολλὰ δῶρα αὐτῇ δοῦναι.

Exercise 103.3

1. This old man is so weak that he is not able to run.
2. That judge was so just that everyone trusted him.
3. The city was so big that the enemy did not capture it.
4. The danger was so great that all the women were shouting.
5. The boys were so stupid that they were often punished by their teacher.

Vocabulary 53	
μέλλω (+ fut. infin.)	I am about to
κλέπτω, fut. κλέψω aor. ἔκλεψα	I steal
ἡ κεφαλή	head

§104 *A king's plan to keep his money safe is foiled by a workman and his sons.*

καὶ βασιλεύς τις ἦν ὅς πολλὰ χρήματα εἶχεν. οὗτος δέ, βουλόμενος ἀσφαλῶς τὰ χρήματα ἔχειν, ταμιεῖον λίθινον ἰσχυρότατον ἐποίησε. ἀλλὰ ὁ ἐργαζόμενος ἕνα τῶν λίθων οὕτω παρεσκεύασε ὥστε αὐτὸν ῥᾳδίως ἐκ τοῦ τειχοῦς ἐξαιρεῖσθαι δύνασθαι. μετὰ δὲ χρόνον οὐ πολὺν ὁ ἐργαζόμενος, ἀποθανεῖσθαι μέλλων, καλήσας τοὺς δύο παῖδας αὐτοῖς πάντα ἐδήλωσεν. οἱ οὖν παῖδες πρὸς τὸ ταμιεῖον ἄνευ φόβου νυκτὸς ἐλθόντες καὶ τὸν λίθον ῥᾳδίως ἐξέλοντες πολλὰ τῶν χρημάτων ἔκλεψαν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεύς ταῦτα ἰδων ἐθαύμασεν τε καὶ ὠργίσθη. πάγας οὖν ἐποίησε. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ κλέπται πρὸς τὸ ἀγγεῖον ἐπανῆλθον, ὁ νεώτερος εἰς πάγην ἔπεσεν. εὐθὺς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἐκέλευσε ὡς τάχιστα ἀποτέμνειν αὐτοῦ τὴν κεφαλήν. ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ποίησας ἔφυγε, φέρων τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ κεφαλήν. τὸ σῶμα ἀκέφαλον ἐν τῷ ταμιείῳ ἔμενεν.

τὸ ταμιεῖον = treasury
λίθινος, -η, -ον = made of stone
ὁ ἐργαζόμενος = workman
(ἐξ)αἱρέω = I take (out)
δύναμαι = I am able
ἐδήλωσε = he explained
ἐξέλοντες = removing
ὀργίζομαι = I become angry
ἡ πάγη = trap
ὁ κλέπτης = thief
τὸ ἀγγεῖον = coffer, jar
ἔπεσεν = he fell
ἀποτέμνω = I cut off
ἀκέφαλος = headless

§105 Direct and Indirect Speech

You will soon be meeting some constructions which will require familiarity with the difference, in English, between direct and indirect speech. It will save you some heartache over the following weeks if you read what follows carefully; and if you understand it, that's even better!

Direct speech is quite simple: it consists of the words which actually come out of a person's mouth when they speak. In English the fact that direct speech is happening is indicated by quotation marks/inverted commas (" and ", or ' and ').

Examples:
A command: *'Be quiet, boy!'*
A statement: *'This boy is stupid.'*
A question: *'What is the boy doing?'*

Indirect (or 'reported') speech consists of a 'verb above the neck' (saying, seeing, speaking etc), usually in the past, followed by a tweaked version of the direct speech. Study this table:

	Direct speech (the actual words used)	**Indirect speech** (introduced by a verb above the neck)
Command	'Be quiet, boy!'	He told the boy to be quiet.
Statement	'This boy is stupid.' 'This boy has been stupid.' 'This boy will be stupid.'	He said that this boy was stupid. He said that this boy had been stupid. He said that this boy would be stupid.
Question	'What is the boy doing?' 'What has the boy done?' 'What will the boy do?'	He asked what the boy was doing. He asked what the boy had done. He asked what the boy would do.

Study carefully the shift in verb tenses between the direct and indirect versions of each example. This shift plays a key part when it comes to translating indirect speech into and out of Greek.

Exercise 105.1
Give the direct speech represented by these indirect examples. In other words, what were the actual words which came out of the speakers' mouths?

Example:
Question: The girl said that she loved Greek.
Answer: 'I love Greek'.

1. He said that he was very intelligent.
2. They said that they would rob the bank tomorrow.
3. I said that I had already done the work.
4. They shouted that they were bored with the lesson.
5. We admitted that we had done wrong.

Exercise 105.2
Put these direct sentences into indirect speech, starting each answer with a 'verb above the neck' in the past.

Example:
Question: 'I will easily pass the test'.
Answer: He said that he would easily pass the test.

1. 'I am the greatest.'
2. 'We shall easily pass our exams.'
3. 'He has made a fool of himself.'
4. 'They are running fast.'
5. 'He will deliver the homework soon.'

§106 Indirect statements: introduction

These are more complicated in Greek than in English, because in Greek there are three ways of expressing them. Below is a summary, to give you a taste of what to expect in the pages that follow. Do not panic – there is too much to take in at once here, so don't even try! – all will become clearer once we work through the three methods one at a time.

English: 'verb above the neck' + that…….
(saying, thinking, seeing etc.)

Examples: We all know that Greek teachers are clever.
He thinks that he is intelligent.
They saw that the pupils were running.

Type 1
Verbs of thinking, and φημί, such as:

φημί	*I say*
νομίζω	*I think*
ἐλπίζω	*I hope*

Usage: nominative (emphatic) or accusative (change of subject) + infinitive
Example: νομίζω τὸν ἄνδρα σοφὸν εἶναι.
I think that the man is wise.

Type 2
Verbs of knowing and noticing, such as:

οἶδα	*I know*
γιγνώσκω	*I know*
αἰσθάνομαι	*I notice*
ὁράω	*I see* (n.b. strong aorist εἶδον = *I saw*)
ἀκούω	*I hear*

Usage: nominative (emphatic) or accusative (change of subject) + participle
Example: οἶδα τὸν ἄνδρα σοφὸν ὄντα.
I know that the man is wise.

Type 3
Verbs of saying (but not φημί) such as:

λέγω	*I say*
ἀγγέλλω	*I announce*
ἀποκρίνομαι	*I reply*

Usage: ὅτι or ὡς + normal indicative verb
Example: λέγω ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ σοφός ἐστιν.
I say that the man is wise.

Summary

Type 1 **infinitive**	**Type 2** **participle**	**Type 3** ὁτι /ὡς + **indicative**
φημί νομίζω ἐλπίζω	οἶδα γιγνώσκω αἰσθάνομαι ὁράω ἀκούω	λέγω ἀγγέλλω ἀποκρίνομαι

§107 Indirect statements: Type 1 – infinitives

Verbs of thinking, and φημί, such as:

νομίζω	*I think*
φημί	*I say*
ἐλπίζω	*I hope*

Here are the key parts of the verb φημί *I say*:

φημί - *I say*

Present	**Imperfect**
φημί	ἔφην
φῄς	ἔφησθα / ἔφης
φησί(ν)	ἔφη
φαμέν	ἔφαμεν
φατέ	ἔφατε
φασί(ν)	ἔφασαν
Infinitive	φάναι
Participle	φάς, φᾶσα, φάν

Right, now study the fine print:

- The verb of the indirect statement is an **infinitive**.
- If the subject of the indirect statement is different from the subject of the 'verb above the neck', it goes into the ACCUSATIVE.

Example:

νομίζω τὸν παῖδα εἶναι σοφόν.
I think that the boy is wise.

If the subject of the indirect statement is the same as that of the 'verb above the neck', it is left out in Greek.

Example:

νομίζει εἶναι σοφός.
He thinks that he (himself) is wise.

In this second case a nominative pronoun might be added for emphasis:

νομίζει αὐτὸς εἶναι σοφός.
He thinks that he (himself) is wise.

Negatives
not = οὐ

Example:
νομίζει οὐκ εἶναι σοφός.
He thinks that he (himself) is not wise.

With the verb φημί *I say*, the negative goes in front of this verb.
This effectively gives the meaning *to deny*.

Example:
οὐ φημὶ εἶναι σοφός.
I say that I am not wise = I deny that I am wise.

Tense of the infinitive
This is the same as the tense actually used in direct speech by the speaker. Study these six examples:

νομίζω λύειν τὸν δοῦλον.	I think that I am releasing the slave.
νομίζω λύσαι τὸν δοῦλον.	I think that I have released the slave.
νομίζω λύσειν τὸν δοῦλον.	I think that I will release the slave.
ἐνόμιζον λύειν τὸν δοῦλον.	I thought that I was releasing the slave.
ἐνόμιζον λύσαι τὸν δοῦλον.	I thought that I had released the slave.
ἐνόμιζον λύσειν τὸν δοῦλον.	I thought that I would release the slave.

Vocabulary 54	
νομίζω, νομίω, ἐνόμισα	I think
φημί, φήσω, ἔφην (imperf.)	I say
ἐλπίζω, ἐλπιῶ, ἤλπισα	I hope

Exercise 107.1
1. νομίζομεν τοῦτον τὸν παῖδα σοφώτατον εἶναι.
2. ἡ γυνὴ ἔφη μάλιστα φιλεῖν ἐκεῖνον τὸν ἄνδρα.
3. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἔφασαν παρασκευάσειν μέγιστον ναυτικὸν.
4. οἱ δοῦλοι οὐκ ἔφασαν ῥᾴδιον εἶναι φεύγειν.
5. οἱ πολῖται νομίζουσι τοῦτον τὸν στρατιώτην ἀγαθὸν στρατηγὸν ἔσεσθαι.

Exercise 107.2

1. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι πολλάκις ἔφασαν μισεῖν τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους.
2. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐνόμιζον ἐκεῖνον τὸν στρατηγὸν τοὺς πολεμίους νικήσειν.
3. ὁ κακὸς παῖς οὐκ ἔφη τοῦτο ποιῆσαι.
4. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἔφη τῷ τῶν πολεμίων στρατοπέδῳ προσβαλεῖν.
5. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔλπιζον τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων στρατιώτας ῥᾴον νικηθήσεσθαι.

Exercise 107.3

1. The man said that he loved that beautiful woman.
2. All children think that their teachers are unfair.
3. The sailors said that they had been prevented by the wind.
4. That doctor says that he will not do this.
5. We thought that the enemy had taken the city.

§108 Indirect statements: Type 2 – participles

Verbs of knowing and noticing, such as:

οἶδα	*I know*
γιγνώσκω	*I know/realise/understand*
αἰσθάνομαι	*I notice*
ὁράω	*I see* (n.b. strong aorist εἶδον = *I saw*)
ἀκούω	*I hear*

A key verb is οἶδα *I know*: here are the main parts of it:

οἶδα – *I know*

	Present	**Imperfect**	
	οἶδα	ᾔδη	
	οἶσθα	ᾔδησθα	
	οἶδε(ν)	ᾔδει(ν)	
	ἴσμεν	ᾖσμεν	
	ἴστε	ᾖστε	
	ἴσασι(ν)	ᾖσαν	
	Infinitive	εἰδέναι *to know*	
	Participle – *knowing*		
	masculine	**feminine**	**neuter**
singular	εἰδώς	εἰδυῖα	εἰδός
	εἰδότα	εἰδυῖαν	εἰδός
	εἰδότος	εἰδυίας	εἰδότος
	εἰδότι	εἰδυίᾳ	εἰδότι
plural	εἰδότες	εἰδυῖαι	εἰδότα
	εἰδότας	εἰδυίας	εἰδότα
	εἰδότων	εἰδυιῶν	εἰδότων
	εἰδόσι(ν)	εἰδυίαις	εἰδόσι(ν)

The verb of the indirect statement is a **participle**.

If the subject of the indirect statement is <u>different</u> from the subject of the 'verb above the neck', it goes, once again, into the ACCUSATIVE.

Example:

οἶδα <u>τὸν παῖδα ὄντα</u> σοφόν.

I know that the boy is wise.

If the subject of the indirect statement is the same as that of the 'verb above the neck', once again it is left out in Greek.

Example*:*

οἶδα σοφὸς ὤν.
I know that I am wise.

In this second case a nominative pronoun might be added for emphasis:

Example:

οἶδα αὐτὸς ποιήσας τοῦτο.
I know that I (myself) have done this

Vocabulary 55	
οἶδα	I know
γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἐγνώσθην	I know/realise/ understand
αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ᾐσθόμην	I notice
ὁράω, ὀψομαι, εἶδον, ὤφθην	I see
ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἠκούσθην	I hear

Exercise 108.1

1. ἴσμεν πάντας τοῦς διδασκάλους σοφοὺς ὄντας.
2. ἐμάθομεν τὴν ἡμετέραν στρατιὰν νικήσασαν τοὺς πολεμίους.
3. οἱ στρατιῶται ᾖσαν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀποθανούμενοι.
4. οἱ νεανίαι ᾔσθοντο ἐκείνην τὴν γυναῖκα καλλίστην οὖσαν.
5. οἱ δοῦλοι ἴσασιν ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου λυθησόμενοι.

Exercise 108.2

1. ὁ στρατηγὸς ᾔσθετο τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐν μεγάλῳ κινδύνῳ ὄντας.
2. οἶδα τοῦτον τὸν ποιητὴν ἀγαθὴν βίβλον γράψαντα.
3. ἴσμεν ἐκεῖνον τὸν κριτὴν δίκαιον ὄντα.
4. ὁ βασιλεὺς οἶδε τὴν στρατιὰν μεγίστην συμφορὰν παθοῦσαν.
5. εἰδότες τὴν ὁδὸν χαλεπωτάτην ἐσομένην, οἱ πολῖται ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξῆλθον.

Exercise 108.3

1. We know that those old men are weak.
2. I heard that that king was very rich.
3. The enemy noticed that the Athenians were sacrificing to the gods.
4. The general saw that the soldiers were fighting well.
5. I hear that this poet has written a long book.

§109 Indirect statements: Type 3 – ὅτι / ὡς

Verbs of saying (but not φημί), such as:

λέγω	*I say*
ἀγγέλλω	*I announce*
ἀποκρίνομαι	*I reply*

Usage: ὅτι or ὡς + normal indicative

Example: λέγει ὅτι ὁ παῖς σοφός ἐστιν.
He says that the boy is wise.

Note 1: If the verb above the neck is in the past:

- a present tense must be translated as *was/were*;
- an aorist tense must be translated as *had*;
- a future tense must be translated as *would*.

Note 2: When the main verb is in the past an optative is sometimes used.
εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ παῖς σοφὸς εἴη.
He said that the boy was wise.

Exercise 109.1

1. ὁ δεσπότης εἶπεν ὅτι λύσει τὸν δοῦλον.
2. οἱ πολῖται εἶπον ὅτι οἱ τοῦ κριτοῦ λόγοι ἀληθεῖς εἰσιν.
3. ὁ διδάσκαλος ἤγγειλεν ὅτι κολάσει τοῦτον τὸν παῖδα.
4. ὁ δοῦλος ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ταῦτα οὐ ποιήσει.
5. οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι στρατιῶται εἶπον ὅτι ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος ἀποθνήσκειν ἐθέλουσιν.

Exercise 109.2

1. ὁ δεσπότης εἶπεν ὅτι πολλοὶ δοῦλοι φεύγουσιν.
2. ὁ ἰατρὸς εἶπεν ὅτι θεραπεύσει τὸν ἀσθενῆ γέροντα.
3. τοῖς πολίταις ἠγγέλθη ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι τὴν πόλιν ἔλαβον.
4. ὁ ποιητὴς ἤγγειλε ὅτι ἡ βίβλος ἣν ἔγραψε μακρά ἐστιν.
5. οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι ὀλίγων ἡμέρων λυθῆναι ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ.

Exercise 109.3

1. The sailors announced that the harbour was safe.
2. The messenger said that the enemy were arriving.
3. The king announced that he would always honour brave generals.
4. The woman says that she loves her daughter.
5. The soldier replied that the Spartans had prepared their weapons.

§110 *The Trojans ignore the advice of Cassandra, Laocoön and Apollo about the wooden horse.*

ἡμέρας δὲ γενομένης ἔρημον οἱ Τρῶες τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατοπέδον ἴδοντες καὶ νομίσαντες αὐτοὺς πεφευγέναι, εἷλκον τὸν ἵππον εἰς τὴν πόλιν καὶ ἐβουλεύοντο τί χρὴ ποιεῖν. Κασσάνδρας δὲ λεγούσης πολλοὺς στρατιώτας ἐν τῷ ἵππῳ εἶναι, καὶ προσέτι Λαοκόωντος, τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει κατακαίειν, τοῖς δ᾽αὐτὸν ἐᾶν θεοῖς δῶρον. Ἀπόλλων δ᾽αὐτοῖς σημεῖον ἔπεμψεν· δύο γὰρ δράκοντες διανηξάμενοι διὰ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐκ τῶν πλησίον νήσων τοὺς τοὺ Λαοκόωντος υἱοὺς κατέφαγον. ὡς δ᾽ἐγένετο νὺξ καὶ πάντας ὕπνος εἶχεν, οἱ Ἕλληνες οἱ ἐν τῷ ἵππῳ κρυπτόμενοι λάθρᾳ ἐξελθόντες καὶ ἀποκτείναντες πολλοὺς τῶν Τρώων τὴν πόλιν διέφθειραν.

ἔρημος = deserted

πεφευγέναι = had fled
ἕλκω, ἕλξω, εἵλκυσα, εἱλκύσθην = I drag
βουλεύομαι = I consider, deliberate

προσέτι = in addition
κατακαίω = I burn completely
ἐάω = I allow
τὸ σημεῖον = sign
ὁ δράκων, δράκοντος = serpent
διανέω = I swim across

πλησίον = nearby
κατεσθίω = I eat up

§111 Indirect questions

English: verb above the neck + question word

Examples:

Main Clause	Indirect question
I asked	**WHY** he had come.
He knew	**WHERE** the enemy was.
You told me	**HOW** to do it.
They explained	**WHAT** he had done.
We know	**WHO** the winner is.
I do not know	**WHETHER** he is clever or not.

In Greek, indirect questions are introduced by words like:

Vocabulary 56	
εἰ	whether / if
πότερον... ἤ...	whether... or...
ὅπου, ποῦ	where
ὅποι, ποῖ	where (to)
(ὁ)ποῖος	what sort of
ὁπόθεν, πόθεν	where from
ὁπότε, πότε	when
πόσος, -η, -ον	how big, how much
πόσοι, -αι, -α	how many
διὰ τί, τί	why
ὅστις, τίς	who *(see table below)*
ὅ τι *	what / which *(see table on the next page)*

* These words are usually printed separately, to avoid confusion with the single word ὅτι, *that.*

Who or *What/Which* (ὅστις) in indirect questions

This is delightfully tricky, because both the ὅσ- bit and the -τις bit change their endings, as follows:

		who, what, which in indirect questions		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**
Singular	nom	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
	acc	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
	gen	οὑτινος	ἡστινος	οὑτινος
	dat	ᾧτινι	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι
Plural	nom	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
	acc	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα
	gen	ὧντινων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων
	dat	οἷστισι(ν)	οἷστισι(ν)	οἷστισι(ν)

Key vocabulary reminder
ἐρωτάω – *I ask* – has a strong aorist, ἠρόμην, as well as a weak aorist, ἠρώτησα.

Verb in the indirect question
This follows the same rule as Indirect Statements (Type 3) – λέγω, ἀγγέλλω + ὅτι or ὡς. That is, a normal indicative verb (but sometimes the optative if the main verb is in the past.)

The tense of the verb is the same as the words actually spoken in direct speech. Study these examples:

1. οὐκ οἶδα ὅστις ἐστίν.
   I do not know who he is.
   (Actual words spoken: *Who is he?* – present tense.)

2. ἤρετο ὅπου οἱ πολέμιοί εἰσιν. (indicative)
   ἤρετο ὅπου οἱ πολέμιοι εἶεν. (optative)
   He asked where the enemy were.
   (Actual words spoken: *Where are the enemy?* – present tense.)

3. ἤρετο αὐτοὺς διὰ τί προσέβαλον. (indicative)
   ἤρετο αὐτοὺς διὰ τί προσβάλοιεν. (optative)
   He asked them why they had attacked.
   (Actual words spoken: *Why have you attacked?* – aorist tense.)

4. ἤρετο αὐτοὺς τί ποιήσουσιν. (indicative)
ἤρετο αὐτοὺς τί ποιήσοιεν. (optative)
He asked them what they would do.
(Actual words spoken: *What will you do?* – future tense.)

5. ἤρετο αὐτοὺς πότερον ἐνίκησαν ἢ οὔ.
He asked them whether they had won or not.
(Actual words spoken: *Have you won or not?* – aorist tense.)

Exercise 111.1

1. ἐκεῖνος ὁ διδάσκαλος οὐκ οἶδε ὁ τί ποιεῖ.
2. ὁ δεσπότης ἤρετο τοὺς δούλους ὅπου οἱ ἵπποι εἶεν.
3. ὁ στρατηγὸς ἠρώτησε τοὺς στρατιώτας εἰ βούλονται μάχεσθαι.
4. ὁ ἡγεμὼν ἤρετο τοὺς ἀγγέλους τίνες εἰσιν καὶ πόθεν ἦλθον.
5. ὁ δεσπότης οὐκ οἶδε ποῖ οἱ δοῦλοι ἔφυγον.

Exercise 111.2

1. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐβούλοντο εἰδέναι ἅτινα οἱ πολέμιοι παρασκευάζουσιν.
2. ἠρόμεθα τὸν αἰχμάλωτον πότερον φίλιος ἢ ἐχθρὸς εἴη.
3. οἱ στρατιῶται ἤροντο τὸν στρατηγὸν τί ποιήσει.
4. ἡ μήτηρ ἠρώτησε τοὺς ξένους οἵτινες εἰσίν.
5. ὁ δεσπότης ἤρετο τοὺς δούλους διὰ τί ἀπέκτειναν τὰ ζῷα.

Exercise 111.3

1. The boy asked where his mother was.
2. The teacher wants to know who has written these bad words.
3. The king asked the general where the enemy had fled (to).
4. We do not know whether our teacher is wise or foolish.
5. The soldiers asked the general why he had not attacked the city.

Vocabulary 57	
φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, ἐφοβήθην	I fear
αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον, ᾑρέθην	I take (in the hand)
χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην + dat.	I use
ἐσθίω, ἔδομαι, ἔφαγον	I eat

§112 *Rhea, wife of Cronos, foils his plan to get rid of his own children, and Zeus eventually deposes him.*

ὁ δὲ Κρόνος ἦν ὁ τῶν θεῶν βασιλεύς. ἡ δὲ γυνὴ αὐτοῦ, ὀνόματι Ῥέα, ἔτεκε πολλοὺς παῖδας· ἀλλὰ Κρόνος, καίπερ ἰσχυρὸς ὤν, μάλιστα ἐφοβεῖτο· ἠγγέλθη γὰρ αὐτῷ ὅτι παῖς τις αὐτοῦ ἀφαιρήσει τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ οὖν θεὸς, ὁπότε Ῥέα τέκοι παῖδα, ὡς τάχιστα ἤσθιεν αὐτόν. τέλος δ᾽ἀπῆλθε Ῥέα ἵνα Κρόνος μὴ μανθάνοι τί ποιεῖ· ἐκεῖ δὲ τεκοῦσα τὸν Δία, ἐκέλευσε τὰς θεὰς αὐτὸν τρέφειν. ἔπειτα δ᾽ἐσπαργάνωσε λίθον καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ Κρόνῳ· οὗτος δὲ νομίζων τοῦτον εἶναι τὸν υἱόν, εὐθὺς ἔφαγεν. μετὰ δ᾽ ὀλίγα ἔτη Ζεὺς, φαρμάκῳ χρώμενος ἠνάγκασε τὸν πατέρα ἐξεμεῖν τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφοὺς. αὐτῶν δὲ βοηθούντων, ἐξέβαλε Κρόνον καὶ αὐτὸς ἦρχε τῶν θεῶν.

τίκτω (aor. ἔτεκον) = I give birth to

(ἀφ-)αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον, ᾑρέθην = I take (away)

ὁπότε + optative = whenever

τρέφω = I bring up, rear

σπαργανόω = I wrap up in baby clothes

τὸ φάρμακον = drug, medicine

χρώμενος = from χράομαι

ἐξεμέω = I cough up, vomit

§113 Conditional clauses

These are clauses which begin with the word *if.*

They are followed by a main clause which tells you what happens if the conditional clause is fulfilled.

Examples:

Conditional (*if*) clause	**Main clause**
If you do this	you are stupid.
If this boy were to work harder,	his results would improve.
If I had revised more,	I would have passed the exam.

Negative conditional clauses begin with *if... not...* or *unless....*

Example:

If you do **not** do this,
Unless you do this, I shall punish you.

There are two sorts of conditions: open and closed.

Open Conditions in the Future
These are when the speaker does not know whether the condition is fulfilled or not. This is often the case with future events, because we do not know what will happen in the future.

Examples:

Future: εἰ + future indicative *or* ἐάν + future subjunctive*
(but expressed by an English present tense)

εἰ τοῦτο λέξει, μῶρος ἔσται.
or
ἐάν τοῦτο λέξῃ, μῶρος ἔσται.
If he says this (in the future), he will be foolish.

* The future subjunctive is simply the present subjunctive with a σ between the verb stem and its ending.

Closed (or Remote) Conditions in the Past
These conditions suggest that something is unlikely to have happened.

These are easily spotted by an ἄν in the main clause in Greek.

had....., would have.....
past indicative..... ἄν + past indicative
(usually aorist) (usually aorist)

Example:
εἰ τοῦτο ἔλεξε, μῶρος ἄν ἦν.*
If he had said this, he would have been foolish.

* Because the verb *to be* does not have an aorist, its imperfect tense does the job here.

Negatives
μή in the conditional clause, οὐ in the main clause.

Examples:
εἰ μὴ φεύξεις, ληφθήσῃ.
Unless you flee/If you don't flee, you will be caught.

εἰ μὴ εὖ ἐμαχέσαντο, οὐκ ἄν ἐνίκησαν.
If they had not fought well, they would not have won.

Exercise 113.1
1. εἰ ὁ στρατηγὸς πλειόνας στρατιώτας ἔπεμψαν, ἡ πόλις ἂν ἐσώθη.
2. εἰ τοῦτο ποιήσεις, κολάσω σε.
3. εἰ εὐθὺς τῇ πόλει προσεβάλομεν, θᾶσσον ἂν ἐλάβομεν.
4. εἰ ἄμεινον ἐμαχέσαντο οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ἂν ἐνίκησαν.
5. εἰ οἱ δοῦλοι μὴ ἐκολάσθησαν, οὐκ ἂν ἔφυγον.

Exercise 113.2
1. εἰ εὖ ἐμαχεσάμην, ὁ στρατηγὸς πολλὰ χρήματά μοι ἂν ἔδωκεν.
2. εἰ οἱ Ἕλληνες τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἐφίλησαν, πόλεμος οὐκ ἂν ἐγένετο.
3. ἐὰν τοῦ διδασκάλου ἀκούσητε, ἀεὶ μαθήσεσθε.
4. εἰ ἀγαθὸς διδάσκαλος ἦσθα, ἠκούσαμέν ἄν σου.
5. εἰ τ᾽ἀληθῆ εἶπον, ὁ κριτὴς οὐκ ἄν ἐκόλασέ με.

Exercise 113.3

1. If you (sg) had seen that woman, you would have liked her.
2. If they had guarded the city well, it would not have been taken.
3. If you (sg) say this to the judge, he will punish you.
4. If the young man had killed the king, he would have been punished.
5. If the sailors had arrived more quickly, they would have saved us.

Vocabulary 58	
εἰ	if
δή	indeed
δι᾽ὀλίγου	in a short time, soon
πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον	I fall

§114 *Alexander shows his faith in Philip, one of his doctors.*

ὁ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος πρὸς ποταμός τινα ἀφικόμενος καύματι νικηθεὶς εἰσέβαλε ἑαυτὸν εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ. ἀλλὰ τὸ ὕδωρ οὕτως ψυχρὸν ἦν ὥστε, σπασμοῦ γενομένου, νόσος δεινὴ ἐνέπεσεν αὐτῷ. οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι ἰατροί, εἰδότες τὴν νόσον χαλεπὴν δὴ οὖσαν, ἐνόμιζον αὐτὸν ἀποθανεῖσθαι· μόνον ἰατρός τις, ὀνόματι Φίλιππος, ἔφη θεραπεύσειν αὐτόν.

Φιλίππου δὲ παρασκευαζομένου κύλικα, ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπιστολὴν ἐδέξατο ἐν ᾗ ἠγγέλθη ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι πολλὰ χρήματα τούτῳ τῷ ἰατρῷ ἔδωκαν ἵνα φαρμάκῳ ἀποκτείνοι τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον.

οὗτος δέ, καίπερ μάθων ταῦτα, τὴν κύλικα λαβὼν ἔδωκε τὴν ἐπιστολὴν τῷ Φιλίππῳ. ὁ δέ, οὐ φοβούμενος, εἶπεν ὅτι πειθόμενος ἑαυτῷ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος σωθήσεται. οὗτος δὴ διʼ ὀλίγου ἀνέπνευσεν. καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἀπέθανεν ἄν, εἰ μὴ Φίλιππος πιστὸς ἦν.

τὸ καῦμα, καύματος = heat

ψυχρός, -ά, -όν = cold
ὁ σπασμός = cramp
ἐνπιπτω, aor. ἐνέπεσον = I fall upon

ἡ κύλιξ, κύλικος = cup (of medicine)

τὸ φάρμακον = poison

ἀναπνέω, aor. ἀνέπνευσα = I recover
δῆλος, -η, -ον = clear

Learning Vocabulary Checklist

1	Adjectives 1/2	
	ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν	good
	Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον	Athenian
	αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν	shameful, ugly
	αἴτιος, -α, -ον + gen.	responsible for, guilty of
	ἄλλος, -η, -ο	other, another
	ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον	brave
	ἄξιος, -α, -ον	worthy of
	αὐτός, -ή, -όν	self, himself, herself, itself (emphatic)

2	Adjectives 1/2	
	δεινός, -ή, -όν	terrible, strange, clever
	δίκαιος, -α, -ον	just, fair
	ἕκαστος, -η, -ον	each
	ἐλεύθερος, -α, -ον	free
	ἑτοῖμος, -η, -ον	ready
	ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν	hostile
	ἱερός, -ά, -όν	sacred
	ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν	strong
	κακός, -ή, -όν	bad, wicked

3	Adjectives 1/2	
	καλός, -ή, -όν	beautiful, handsome, fine
	μικρός, -ά, -όν	little
	μόνος, -η, -ον	alone, only
	μῶρος, -α, -ον	foolish, stupid
	νέος, -α, -ον	new, young, recent
	ὀλίγος, -η, -ον	little
	ὀλίγοι, -αι, -α	few
	πιστός, -ή, -όν	faithful

4	Adjectives 1/2	
	πλούσιος, -α, -ον	rich
	ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον	easy
	σοφός, -ή, -όν	wise
	ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν	high
	χαλεπός, -ή, -όν	difficult
	χρήσιμος, -η, -ον	useful
	ἄδικος, ἄδικος, ἄδικον	unjust, wrong

Adjectives 3 -ης		5
ἀληθής, ἀληθής, ἀληθές	true	
ἀσθενής, ἀσθενής, ἀσθενές	weak	
ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλές	safe	
δυστυχής, δυστυχής, δυστυχές	unlucky	
εὐτυχής, εὐτυχής, εὐτυχές	lucky, fortunate	

Adjectives 3 -υς		6
βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ	slow	
εὐρύς, εὐρεῖα, εὐρύ	wide	
ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδύ	pleasant, sweet	
ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ	fast, quick	

Adjectives: others		7
εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός	knowing	
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	big, great	
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	all, every	
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	much	
πολλοί, πολλαί, πολλά	many	

Adverbs		8
ἀεί	always	
αὖθις	again	
ἐκεῖ	there	
ἐνθάδε	here	
ἔπειτα	then, afterwards	
ἔτι	still	
εὖ	well	
εὐθύς	immediately, at once	

Adverbs		9
ἤδη	already, by now	
λάθρᾳ	in secret, secretly	
μάλιστα	most, very much, especially	
μᾶλλον	more	
μόνον	only	
νῦν	now	
οὖν	therefore, and so	
οὕτω(ς)	so, in this way	
πάλαι	long ago, in the past, formerly	

10	**Adverbs**	
	πολλάκις	often
	πρότερον	before, formerly
	πρῶτον	at first, first
	τέλος	at last
	τότε	then
	ὕστερον	later
	ὡς τάχιστα	as quickly as possible

11	**Conjunctions**	
	ἀλλά	but
	γάρ	for
	διότι	because
	εἰ	if
	ἐπεί	when, since
	ἕως	while, until
	ἤ	or, than
	ἤ... ἤ...	either … or …

12	**Conjunctions**	
	ἵνα + subjunctive/optative	in order that, in order to
	καί	and, also, even, too
	μέντοι	however
	ὅτι	that
	ὥστε	that, so that, with the result that
	ὡς	when, as, because
	δέ	but, and
	καίπερ + participle	although

13	**Interrogatives**	
	ποῖος, ποία, ποῖον;	what sort of?
	πόσος, πόση, πόσον;	how big? how much?
	πόσοι, πόσαι, πόσα;	how many?
	πότε;	when?
	ποῦ;	where?
	ποῖ;	to where?
	πόθεν;	from where?
	πῶς;	how?

Negatives		14
μή	not	
μήτε... μήτε...	neither … nor …	
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ	not	
οὔτε... οὔτε...	neither … nor …	
μηδέποτε	never	
οὐδέποτε	never	
μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν	no-one, nothing, no	
οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν	no-one, nothing, no	

Nouns 1 -η		15
ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ	beginning, power, empire	
βοή, βοῆς, ἡ	a shout	
βουλή, βουλῆς, ἡ	plan, a council	
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ	land	
εἰρήνη, εἰρήνης, ἡ	peace	
ἐπιστολή, ἐπιστολῆς, ἡ	letter	
κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ	head	

Nouns 1 -η		16
μάχη, μάχης, ἡ	battle	
νίκη, νίκης, ἡ	victory	
πύλη, πύλης, ἡ	gate	
σιγή, σιγῆς, ἡ	silence	
τίμη, τίμης, ἡ	honour	
τύχη, τύχης, ἡ	chance, luck, fortune (good or bad)	
ὕλη, ὕλης, ἡ	wood, forest	
φίλη, φίλης, ἡ	friend (female)	
φωνή, φωνῆς, ἡ	voice	

Nouns 1 -α		17
ἀγορά, ἀγορᾶς, ἡ	market-place	
Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηνῶν, αἱ	Athens (plural noun)	
βιά, βίας, ἡ	force, strength	
ἐκκλησία, ἐκκλησίας, ἡ	assembly, meeting	
ἑσπέρα, ἑσπέρας, ἡ	evening	
ἡμέρα, ἡμέρας, ἡ	day	
θεά, θεᾶς, ἡ	goddess	
θύρα, θύρας, ἡ	door	
οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ	house	
στρατιά, στρατιᾶς, ἡ	army, expedition	
συμφορά, συμφορᾶς, ἡ	misfortune, disaster	
χώρα, χώρας, ἡ	country, land	
γλῶσσα, γλῶσσης, ἡ	tongue, language	
θάλασσα, θαλάσσης, ἡ	sea	

18	Nouns 1	
	δεσπότης, δεσπότου, ὁ	master
	ναύτης, ναύτου, ὁ	sailor
	πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ	citizen
	στρατιώτης, στρατιώτου, ὁ	soldier
	νεανίας, νεανίου, ὁ	young man

19	Nouns 2 –ος m.	
	ἄγγελος, ἀγγέλου, ὁ	messenger
	ἀγρός, ἀγροῦ, ὁ	field, countryside
	Ἀθηναῖοι, Ἀθηναίων, οἱ	Athenians
	αἰχμάλωτος, αἰχμαλώτου, ὁ	prisoner (of war)
	ἄνεμος, ἀνέμου, ὁ	wind
	ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ	man, person
	βάρβαροι, βαρβάρων, οἱ	foreigners, barbarians
	βίος, βίου, ὁ	life

20	Nouns 2 –ος m.	
	δῆμος, δήμου, ὁ	people, community
	δοῦλος, δούλου, ὁ	slave
	ἔνοικος, ἐνοίκου, ὁ	inhabitant
	θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ	death
	θέος, θεοῦ, ὁ	god
	ἰατρός, ἰατροῦ, ὁ	doctor
	ἵππος, ἵππου, ὁ	horse
	κίνδυνος, κινδύνου, ὁ	danger
	Λακεδαιμόνιοι, Λακεδαιμονίων, οἱ	Spartans

21	Nouns 2 –ος m.	
	λίθος, λίθου, ὁ	stone
	λόγος, λόγου, ὁ	word, speech, argument, story, account
	μῦθος, μύθου, ὁ	story
	νεκρός, νεκροῦ, ὁ	corpse
	νόμος, νόμου, ὁ	law, custom
	ξένος, ξένου, ὁ	stranger, foreigner, host, guest
	οἶνος, οἴνου, ὁ	wine
	οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ	sky, heaven
	πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ	war
	πολέμιοι, πολεμίων, οἱ	the enemy

Nouns 2 –ος m.	22
ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ	river
σῖτος, σίτου, ὁ	food, corn
στρατηγός, στρατηγοῦ, ὁ	general, commander
σύμμαχοι, συμμάχων, οἱ	allies
τόπος, τόπου, ὁ	place
υἱός, υἱοῦ, ὁ	son
ὕπνος, ὕπνου, ὁ	sleep
φίλος, φίλου, ὁ	(male) friend
φόβος, φόβου, ὁ	fear
χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ	time
χρυσός, χρυσοῦ, ὁ	gold

Nouns 2 –ος f.	23
βίβλος, βίβλου, ἡ	book
νῆσος, νήσου, ἡ	island
νόσος, νόσου, ἡ	disease, illness
ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ	road, path, way, journey

Nouns 2 –ον n.	24
ἆθλον, ἆθλου, τό	prize, reward
δεῖπνον, δείπνου, τὸ	dinner, meal
δένδρον, δένδρου, τό	tree
δῶρον, δώρου, τό	present, gift
ἔργον, ἔργου, τό	work, task, deed, action
ἱερόν, ἱεροῦ, τό	temple
ναυτικόν, ναυτικοῦ, τό	fleet
ὅπλα, ὅπλων, τά	weapons, arms, armour
πλοῖον, πλοίου, τὸ	boat, cargo ship

Nouns 3 m./f.	25
ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ	man, husband
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ	woman, wife
βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ	king
γέρων, γέροντος, ὁ	old man
μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ	mother
πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ	father
θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός, ἡ	daughter
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ / ἡ	child, son, daughter, boy, girl

26	Nouns 3 m./f.
ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ	contest, trial
ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ἡ	shield
Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ	Greece
Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ	a Greek
ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος, ὁ	guide, leader
ἱππεύς, ἱππέως, ὁ	cavalryman, *in plural* (the) cavalry
λιμήν, λιμένος, ὁ	harbour
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ	night
πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ	city

27	Nouns 3 m./f.
φύλαξ, φύλακος, ὁ	guard
ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ	ruler, magistrate
χειμών, χειμῶνος, ὁ	storm, winter
πούς, ποδός, ὁ	foot
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ	hand
Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ	Zeus
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ	ship

28	Nouns 3 n.
ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό	name
σῶμα, σώματος, τό	body
χρῆματα, χρημάτων, τά	money, goods, property
πῦρ, πυρός, τό	fire
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	water
ἔτος, ἔτους, τό	year
ξίφος, ξίφους, τό	sword
ὄρος, ὄρους, τό	mountain
τεῖχος, τείχους, τό	wall

29	Cardinal Numbers
εἷς, μία, ἕν	one
δύο, δύο, δύο	two
τρεῖς, τρεῖς, τρία	three
τέσσαρες, τέσσαρες, τέσσαρα	four
πέντε	five
ἕξ	six
ἑπτά	seven
ὀκτώ	eight
ἐννέα	nine
δέκα	ten

Ordinal Numbers		30
πρῶτος, πρώτη, πρῶτον	first	
δεύτερος, δευτέρα, δεύτερον	second	
τρίτος, τρίτη, τρίτον	third	
τέταρτος, τετάρτη, τέταρτον	fourth	
πέμπτος, πέμπτη, πέμπτον	fifth	

Particles		31
ἆρα	? [introduces a question]	
γε	at any rate, even	
δή	indeed	
μέν... δέ...	… but … [marks a contrast]	

Prepositions		32
ἀνά + acc.	up	
ἄνευ + gen.	without	
ἀπό + gen.	from, away from	
διά + acc.	because of, on account of	
διά + gen.	though	
εἰς + acc.	to, into	
ἐκ, ἐξ + gen.	out of, from	
ἐν + dat.	in, among	

Prepositions		33
ἐπί + acc.	against, on to, on, at	
κατά + acc.	according to, by, down, along	
κατά + gen.	down	
μετά + acc.	after	
μετά + gen.	with	
παρά + acc.	contrary to	
παρά + gen.	from (a person)	
περί + acc.	round	
περί + gen.	about, concerning	

Prepositions		34
πλήν + gen.	except	
πρό + gen.	before, in front of	
πρός + acc.	to, towards, against	
ὑπέρ + gen.	on behalf of	
ὑπό + gen.	by (with the agent of passive verbs)	

Prepositional Phrases		35
διὰ τί;	why?	
δι᾽ ὀλίγου	soon	
εἰς τοσοῦτον	to such an extent	
κατὰ θάλασσαν	by sea	
κατὰ γῆν	by land	

36	**Pronouns**
αὐτόν, αὐτήν, αὐτό	him, her, it, them (never in nominative)
αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	himself, herself, itself, themselves
ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ	I (acc., etc - me)
ἡμεῖς, ἡμῶν	we (acc., etc - us)
ὅς, ἥ, ὅ	who, which
σύ	you (singular)
τις, τι	(a) certain, someone, something
ὑμεῖς, ὑμῶν	you (plural)

37	**Pronouns/Adjectives**
τίς; τί;	who? what? which?
ὁ αὐτός, ἡ αὐτή, τό αὐτό	the same
ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν	my, mine
ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο	that, those
ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρα, ἡμέτερον	our
ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε	this
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο	this
σός, σή, σόν	your (singular)

38	**Pronouns/Adjectives**
τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο	such
τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο	so great
τοσοῦτοι, τοσαῦται, τοσαῦτα	so many
ὑμέτερος, ὑμετέρα, ὑμέτερον	your (plural)

39	**Verbs**
ἀναγκάζω	I force, compel
ἄρχω + gen.	I rule
βλάπτω	I harm
γράφω	I write, draw
δακρύω	I cry
διώκω	I chase, pursue
θάπτω	I bury
θαυμάζω	I am amazed, admire

40	**Verbs**
θύω	I sacrifice
καθεύδω	I sleep
κελεύω	I order
κολάζω	I punish
κόπτω	I cut (down)
κρύπτω	I hide (something)
κωλύω (+ infinitive)	I hinder, prevent (someone from doing something)
λύω	I untie, set free

Verbs	41
παρασκευάζω	I prepare
παρέχω	I provide, cause, produce
παύω	I stop
πείθω	I persuade
πέμπω	I send
πιστεύω + dat.	I trust, believe
πράσσω	I do, fare, manage
σῴζω	I save, keep

Verbs	42
φονεύω	I murder, kill
φυλάσσω	I guard
συλλέγω	I collect, assemble

Verbs contracted in -αω	43
ἐρωτάω	I ask, ask for
βοάω	I shout
νικάω	I win, conquer
τιμάω	I honour, respect

Verbs contracted in -εω	44
ἀδικέω	I do wrong, injure
ἀναχωρέω	I retreat, withdraw
βοηθέω	I help, come to help
ζητέω	I seek
μισέω	I hate
οἰκέω	I live (in), inhabit
ποιέω	I do, make
φιλέω	I love, like

Verbs - impersonal	45
δεῖ	it is necessary
δοκεῖ	(I) decide (= it seems good (to me))
ἔξεστι(ν) (μοι)	I am allowed, I can (= it is permitted to me)
χρή	it is necessary

Verbs - irregular	46
ἀγγέλλω	I announce
ἄγω	I lead, bring
αἱρέω	I take
ἀκούω	I hear, listen
ἀποθνῄσκω	I die, am killed
ἀποκτείνω	I kill
βαίνω	I go
βάλλω	I throw, fire at, hit (with missile)

47	Verbs - irregular
γελάω	I laugh
γίγνομαι	I become, happen, occur
γιγνώσκω	I know, realise, understand
διαφθείρω	I destroy
διδάσκω	I teach, tell
ἐθέλω	I wish, am willing
εἰδέναι	to know
εἰμί	I am
εἰσβάλλω	I throw into, invade

48	Verbs - irregular
ἐκφεύγω	I escape
ἐλπίζω	I hope, expect
ἕπομαι + dat.	I follow
ἔρχομαι	I go, come
ἐρωτάω	I ask (a question)
ἐσθίω	I eat
εὑρίσκω	I find
ἔφη	he, she said

49	Verbs - irregular
ἔχω	I have
καθίζω	I sit
καίω	I burn, set on fire
καλέω	I call
κλέπτω	I steal
λαμβάνω	I take, capture
λέγω	I say, speak, tell
λείπω	I leave

50	Verbs - irregular
μανθάνω	I learn, understand
μέλλω + fut. infin.	I intend, am going to
μένω	I wait, wait for, remain
νομίζω	I think, consider
οἶδα	I know
ὁράω	I see
πάσχω	I suffer, experience
πίνω	I drink

Verbs - irregular	51
πίπτω	I fall
πλέω	I sail
προσβάλλω	I attack
τρέχω	I run
φέρω	I carry, bear, endure
φεύγω	I run away
φημί	I say

Verbs - middle	52
αἰσθάνομαι	I notice, perceive
ἀποκρίνομαι	I reply
ἄρχομαι + gen.	I begin
ἀφικνέομαι	I arrive
βούλομαι	I wish
δέχομαι	I receive
κρύπτομαι	I hide (myself)
κτάομαι	I obtain, get
ὀργίζομαι	I grow angry (with)

Verbs - middle	53
παύομαι	I stop, cease from (doing something)
πειράομαι	I try
πορεύομαι	I travel, march
σώζομαι	I get away safely
φοβέομαι	I am afraid, fear
χράομαι + dat.	I use
μάχομαι	I fight

Verbs - middle	54
πείθομαι + dat.	I obey
πυνθάνομαι	I learn, ascertain, ask
ὑπισχνέομαι	I promise
φαίνομαι	I seem, appear

Other stuff	55
ὁ, ἡ, τό	the
οἷός τ᾽ εἰμί	I am able, can
ὦ	o … (addressing someone)

Grammar Summary

Nouns

		1st declension					2nd declension	
		victory f.	goddess f.	sea f.	judge m.	young man m.	word m.	gift n.
singular	nom	νίκη	θεά	θάλασσα	κριτής	νεανίας	λόγος	δῶρον
	voc	νίκη	θεά	θάλασσα	κριτά	νεανία	λόγε	δῶρον
	acc	νίκην	θεάν	θάλασσαν	κριτήν	νεανίαν	λόγον	δῶρον
	gen	νίκης	θεᾶς	θαλάσσης	κριτοῦ	νεανίου	λόγου	δώρου
	dat	νίκῃ	θεᾷ	θαλάσσῃ	κριτῇ	νεανίᾳ	λόγῳ	δώρῳ
plural	nom	νῖκαι	θεαί	θάλασσαι	κριταί	νεανίαι	λόγοι	δῶρα
	voc	νῖκαι	θεαί	θάλασσαι	κριταί	νεανίαι	λόγοι	δῶρα
	acc	νίκας	θεάς	θαλάσσας	κριτάς	νεανίας	λόγους	δῶρα
	gen	νικῶν	θεῶν	θαλασσῶν	κριτῶν	νεανιῶν	λόγων	δώρων
	dat	νίκαις	θεαῖς	θαλάσσαις	κριταῖς	νεανίαις	λόγοις	δώροις

		3rd declension					
		guard m.	old man m.	man m.	father m.	mother f.	daughter f.
singular	nom	φύλαξ	γέρων	ἀνήρ	πατήρ	μήτηρ	θυγάτηρ
	voc	φύλαξ	γέρον	ἄνερ	πάτερ	μῆτερ	θύγατερ
	acc	φύλακα	γέροντα	ἄνδρα	πατέρα	μητέρα	θυγατέρα
	gen	φύλακος	γέροντος	ἀνδρός	πατρός	μητρός	θυγατρός
	dat	φύλακι	γέροντι	ἀνδρί	πατρί	μητρί	θυγατρί
plural	nom	φύλακες	γέροντες	ἄνδρες	πατέρες	μητέρες	θυγατέρες
	voc	φύλακες	γέροντες	ἄνδρες	πατέρες	μητέρες	θυγατέρες
	acc	φύλακας	γέροντας	ἄνδρας	πατέρας	μητέρας	θυγατέρας
	gen	φυλάκων	γερόντων	ἀνδρῶν	πατέρων	μητέρων	θυγατέρων
	dat	φύλαξι(ν)	γέρουσι(ν)	ἀνδράσι(ν)	πατράσι(ν)	μητράσι(ν)	θυγατράσι(ν)

		3rd declension						
		woman f.	ship f.	king m.	city f.	Zeus m.	body n.	wall n.
singular	nom	γυνή	ναῦς	βασιλεύς	πόλις	Ζεύς	σῶμα	τεῖχος
	voc	γύναι	ναῦ	βασιλεῦ	πόλι	Ζεῦ	σῶμα	τεῖχος
	acc	γυναῖκα	ναῦν	βασιλέα	πόλιν	Δία	σῶμα	τεῖχος
	gen	γυναικός	νεώς	βασιλέως	πόλεως	Διός	σώματος	τείχους
	dat	γυναικί	νηί	βασιλεῖ	πόλει	Διί	σώματι	τείχει
plural	nom	γυναῖκες	νῆες	βασιλῆς/εῖς	πόλεις		σώματα	τείχη
	voc	γυναῖκες	νῆες	βασιλῆς/εῖς	πόλεις		σώματα	τείχη
	acc	γυναῖκας	ναῦς	βασιλέας	πόλεις		σώματα	τείχη
	gen	γυναικῶν	νεῶν	βασιλέων	πόλεων		σωμάτων	τειχῶν
	dat	γυναιξί(ν)	ναυσί(ν)	βασιλεῦσι(ν)	πόλεσι(ν)		σώμασι (ν)	τείχεσι(ν)

Adjectives

		wise			friendly		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**	**m.**	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	σοφός	σοφή	σοφόν	φίλιος	φιλία	φίλιον
	voc	σοφέ	σοφή	σοφόν	φίλε	φιλία	φίλιον
	acc	σοφόν	σοφήν	σοφόν	φίλιον	φιλίαν	φίλιον
	gen	σοφοῦ	σοφῆς	σοφοῦ	φιλίου	φιλίας	φιλίου
	dat	σοφῷ	σοφῇ	σοφῷ	φιλίῳ	φιλίᾳ	φιλίῳ
plural	nom	σοφοί	σοφαί	σοφά	φίλιοι	φίλιαι	φίλια
	voc	σοφοί	σοφαί	σοφά	φίλιοι	φίλιαι	φίλια
	acc	σοφούς	σοφάς	σοφά	φιλίους	φιλίας	φίλια
	gen	σοφῶν	σοφῶν	σοφῶν	φιλίων	φιλίων	φιλίων
	dat	σοφοῖς	σοφαῖς	σοφοῖς	φιλίοις	φιλίαις	φιλίοις

		great, big			much, many		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**	**m.**	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
	voc	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ
	acc	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μεγά	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
	gen	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
	dat	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
plural	nom	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
	voc	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά
	acc	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
	gen	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
	dat	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά

		all, every			pleasant, sweet		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**	**m.**	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
	voc	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν	ἡδύς	ἡδεῖα	ἡδύ
	acc	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν	ἡδύν	ἡδεῖαν	ἡδύ
	gen	παντός	πάσης	παντός	ἡδέος	ἡδείας	ἡδέος
	dat	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί	ἡδεῖ	ἡδείᾳ	ἡδεῖ
plural	nom	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα
	voc	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα	ἡδεῖς	ἡδείας	ἡδέα
	acc	πάντων	πασῶν	πάντων	ἡδέων	ἡδειῶν	ἡδέων
	gen	πᾶσι(ν)	πάσαις	πᾶσι(ν)	ἡδέσι(ν)	ἡδείαις	ἡδέσι(ν)
	dat	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα	ἡδεῖς	ἡδεῖαι	ἡδέα

		true			greater, bigger		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**	**m.**	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	ἀληθής	ἀληθής	ἀληθές	μείζων	μείζων	μείζον
	voc	ἀληθής	ἀληθής	ἀληθές	μείζων	μείζων	μείζον
	acc	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθές	μείζονα	μείζονα	μείζον
	gen	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	μείζονος	μείζονος	μείζονος
	dat	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ	μείζονι	μείζονι	μείζονι
plural	nom	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ	μείζονες	μείζονες	μείζονα
	voc	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ	μείζονες	μείζονες	μείζονα
	acc	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ	μείζονας	μείζονας	μείζονα
	gen	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν	μειζόνων	μειζόνων	μειζόνων
	dat	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)

		this, these			this, these		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**	**m.**	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε
	acc	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε
	gen	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε
	dat	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε
plural	nom	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα	οἵδε	αἵδε	τάδε
	acc	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε
	gen	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
	dat	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε

		that, those		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
	acc	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
	gen	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
	dat	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
plural	nom	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
	acc	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα
	gen	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
	dat	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις

Pronouns

		1st person		2nd person		3rd person; -self; the same		
						m. he	**f.** she	**n.** it
singular	nom	ἐγώ	I	σύ	you	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
	acc	ἐμέ / με	me	σέ	you	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
	gen	ἐμοῦ / μου	of me/my	σοῦ	of you/your	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
	dat	ἐμοί / μοι	to/for me	σοί	to/for you	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
plural	nom	ἡμεῖς	we	ὑμεῖς	you	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
	acc	ἡμᾶς	us	ὑμᾶς	you	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά
	gen	ἡμῶν	of us/our	ὑμῶν	of you/your	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
	dat	ἡμῖν	to/for us	ὑμῖν	to/for you	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς

Reflexive Pronouns

		1st person: myself/ourselves		2nd person: yourself/yourselves		3rd person: himself, herself, themselves		
		m.	**f.**	**m.**	**f.**	**m.**	**f.**	**n.**
singular	acc	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν	ἑαυτόν	ἑαυτήν	ἑαυτό
	gen	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ	ἑαυτῆς	ἑαυτοῦ
	dat	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ	ἑαυτῇ	ἑαυτῷ
plural	acc	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	ἑαυτά
	gen	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν
	dat	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυτοῖς

		τῖς; who?; τί; what?			someone/thing, anyone/thing, a certain, some etc.	
		m./f.	**n.**		**m./f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	τίς	τί	who? what? which?	τις	τι
	acc	τίνα	τί	whom? what? which?	τινά	τι
	gen	τίνος	τίνος	whose?	τινός	τινός
	dat	τίνι	τίνι	to whom? to what?	τινί	τινί
plural	nom	τίνες	τίνα	who? what? which?	τινές	τινά
	acc	τίνας	τίνα	whom? what? which?	τινάς	τινά
	gen	τίνων	τίνων	whose?	τινῶν	τινῶν
	dat	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	to whom? to what?	τισί(ν)	τισί(ν)

		Relative pronoun: who(m), what, which			
		m.	**f.**	**n.**	
singular	nom	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	who, which
	acc	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ	whom, which
	gen	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ	of whom, whose, of which
	dat	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ	to/for whom, which
plural	nom	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ	who , which
	acc	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ	whom, which
	gen	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν	of whom, whose, of which
	dat	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς	to/for whom, which

		who, what, which in indirect questions		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
	acc	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
	gen	οὑτινος	ἡστινος	οὑτινος
	dat	ᾧτινι	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι
plural	nom	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
	acc	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα
	gen	ὧντινων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων
	dat	οἷστισι(ν)	αἷστισι(ν)	οἷστισι(ν)

Numerals

	one			two	three		four	
	m.	**f.**	**n.**	**(m./f./n.)**	**m./f.**	**n.**	**m./f.**	**n.**
nom	εἷς	μία	ἕν	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
acc	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν	δύο	τρεῖς	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα
gen	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός	δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν	τεττάρων	τεττάρων
dat	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί	δυοῖν	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)

Verbs

	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist
Active	παύω	ἔπαυον	παύσω	ἔπαυσα
	παύεις	ἔπαυες	παύσεις	ἔπαυσας
	παύει	ἔπαυε(ν)	παύσει	ἔπαυσε(ν)
	παύομεν	ἐπαύομεν	παύσομεν	ἐπαύσαμεν
	παύετε	ἐπαύετε	παύσετε	ἐπαύσατε
	παύουσι(ν)	ἔπαυον	παύσουσι(ν)	ἔπαυσαν
Middle	παύομαι	ἐπαυόμην	παύσομαι	ἐπαυσάμην
	παύει / παύῃ	ἐπαύου	παύσει / παύσῃ	ἐπαύσω
	παύεται	ἐπαύετο	παύσεται	ἐπαύσατο
	παυόμεθα	ἐπαυόμεθα	παυσόμεθα	ἐπαυσάμεθα
	παύεσθε	ἐπαύεσθε	παύσεσθε	ἐπαύσασθε
	παύονται	ἐπαύοντο	παύσονται	ἐπαύσαντο
Passive	παύομαι	ἐπαυόμην	παυσθήσομαι	ἐπαύθην
	παύει / παύῃ	ἐπαύου	παυσθήσει / -ῃ	ἐπαύθης
	παύεται	ἐπαύετο	παυσθήσεται	ἐπαύθη
	παυόμεθα	ἐπαυόμεθα	παυσθησόμεθα	ἐπαύθημεν
	παύεσθε	ἐπαύεσθε	παυσθήσεσθε	ἐπαύθητε
	παύονται	ἐπαύοντο	παυσθήσονται	ἐπαύθησαν

	Subjunctive		Optative	
	Present	Aorist	Present	Aorist
Active	παύω	παύσω	παύοιμι	παύσαιμι
	παύῃς	παύσῃς	παύοις	παύσειας /παύσαις
	παύῃ	παύσῃ	παύοι	παύσειε(ν) / παῦσαι
	παύωμεν	παύσωμεν	παύοιμεν	παύσαιμεν
	παύητε	παύσητε	παύοιτε	παύσαιτε
	παύωσι(ν)	παύσωσι(ν)	παύοιεν	παύσαιεν
Middle	παύωμαι	παύσωμαι	παυοίμην	παυσαίμην
	παύῃ	παύσῃ	παύοιο	παύσαιο
	παύηται	παύσηται	παύοιτο	παύσαιτο
	παυώμεθα	παυσώμεθα	παυοίμεθα	παυσαίμεθα
	παυήσθε	παυσήσθε	παύοισθε	παύσαισθε
	παύωνται	παύσωνται	παύοιντο	παύσαιντο
Passive	παύωμαι	παυσθῶ	παυοίμην	παυσθείην
	παύῃ	παυσθῇς	παύοιο	παυσθείης
	παύηται	παυσθῇ	παύοιτο	παυσθείη
	παυώμεθα	παυσθῶμεν	παυοίμεθα	παυσθεῖμεν
	παυήσθε	παυσθῆτε	παύοισθε	παυσθεῖτε
	παύωνται	παυσθῶσι(ν)	παύοιντο	παυσθεῖεν

Verbs in -εω				
	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist
Active	φιλῶ	ἐφίλουν	φιλήσω	ἐφίλησα
	φιλεῖς	ἐφίλεις	φιλήσεις	ἐφίλησας
	φιλεῖ	ἐφίλει	φιλήσει	ἐφίλησε(ν)
	φιλοῦμεν	ἐφιλοῦμεν	φιλήσομεν	ἐφιλήσαμεν
	φιλεῖτε	ἐφιλεῖτε	φιλήσετε	ἐφιλήσατε
	φιλοῦσι(ν)	ἐφίλουν	φιλήσουσι(ν)	ἐφίλησαν
Middle	φιλοῦμαι	ἐφιλούμην	φιλήσομαι	ἐφιλήσαμην
	φιλεῖ / φιλῇ	ἐφιλοῦ	φιλήσει/-ῃ	ἐφιλήσω
	φιλεῖται	ἐφιλεῖτο	φιλήσεται	ἐφιλήσατο
	φιλούμεθα	ἐφιλούμεθα	φιλησόμεθα	ἐφιλησάμεθα
	φιλεῖσθε	ἐφιλεῖσθε	φιλήσεσθε	ἐφιλήσασθε
	φιλοῦνται	ἐφιλοῦντο	φιλήσονται	ἐφιλήσαντο
Passive	φιλοῦμαι	ἐφιλούμην	φιληθήσομαι	ἐφιλήθην
	φιλεῖ / φιλῇ	ἐφιλοῦ	φιληθήσει /-ῃ	ἐφιλήθης
	φιλεῖται	ἐφιλεῖτο	φιληθήσεται	ἐφιλήθη
	φιλούμεθα	ἐφιλούμεθα	φιληθησόμεθα	ἐφιλήθημεν
	φιλεῖσθε	ἐφιλεῖσθε	φιληθήσεσθε	ἐφιλήθητε
	φιλοῦνται	ἐφιλοῦντο	φιληθήσονται	ἐφιλήθησαν

	Subjunctive		Optative	
	Present	Aorist	Present	Aorist
Active	φιλῶ	φιλήσω	φιλοίην	φιλήσαιμι
	φιλῇς	φιλήσῃς	φιλοίης	φιλήσαιο
	φιλῇ	φιλήσῃ	φιλοίη	φιλήσαιτο
	φιλῶμεν	φιλήσωμεν	φιλοῖμεν	φιλησαίμεθα
	φιλῆτε	φιλήσητε	φιλοῖτε	φιλήσαισθε
	φιλῶσι(ν)	φιλήσωσι(ν)	φιλοῖεν	φιλήσαιντο
Middle	φιλῶμαι	φιλήσωμαι	φιλοίμην	φιλησαίμην
	φιλῇ	φιλήσῃ	φιλοῖο	φιλήσαιο
	φιλῆται	φιλήσηται	φιλοῖτο	φιλήσαιτο
	φιλῶμεθα	φιλησώμεθα	φιλοίμεθα	φιλησαίμεθα
	φιλῆσθε	φιλήσησθε	φιλοῖσθε	φιλήσαισθε
	φιλῶνται	φιλήσωνται	φιλοῖντο	φιλήσαιντο
Passive	φιλῶμαι	φιληθῶ	φιλοίμην	φιληθείην
	φιλῇ	φιληθῇς	φιλοῖο	φιληθείης
	φιλῆται	φιληθῇ	φιλοῖτο	φιληθείη
	φιλῶμεθα	φιληθῶμεν	φιλοίμεθα	φιληθεῖμεν
	φιλῆσθε	φιληθῆτε	φιλοῖσθε	φιληθεῖτε
	φιλῶνται	φιληθῶσι(ν)	φιλοῖντο	φιληθεῖεν

Verbs in -αω				
	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist
Active	τιμῶ	ἐτίμων	τιμήσω	ἐτίμησα
	τιμᾷς	ἐτίμας	τιμήσεις	ἐτίμησας
	τιμᾷ	ἐτίμα	τιμήσει	ἐτίμησε
	τιμῶμεν	ἐτιμῶμεν	τιμήσομεν	ἐτιμήσαμεν
	τιμᾶτε	ἐτιμᾶτε	τιμήσετε	ἐτιμήσετε
	τιμῶσι(ν)	ἐτίμων	τιμήσουσι(ν)	ἐτίμησαν
Middle	τιμῶμαι	ἐτιμώμην	τιμήσομαι	ἐτιμησάμην
	τιμᾷ	ἐτιμῶ	τιμήσει/-ῃ	ἐτιμήσω
	τιμᾶται	ἐτιμᾶτο	τιμήσεται	ἐτιμήσατο
	τιμώμεθα	ἐτιμώμεθα	τιμησόμεθα	ἐτιμησάμεθα
	τιμᾶσθε	ἐτιμᾶσθε	τιμήσεσθαι	ἐτιμήσασθε
	τιμῶνται	ἐτιμῶντο	τιμήσονται	ἐτιμήσαντο
Passive	τιμῶμαι	ἐτιμώμην	τιμηθήσομαι	ἐτιμήθην
	τιμᾷ	ἐτιμῶ	τιμηθήσει/-ῃ	ἐτιμήθης
	τιμᾶται	ἐτιμᾶτο	τιμηθήσεται	ἐτιμήθη
	τιμώμεθα	ἐτιμώμεθα	τιμηθησόμεθα	ἐτιμήθημεν
	τιμᾶσθε	ἐτιμᾶσθε	τιμηθήσεσθε	ἐτιμήθητε
	τιμῶνται	ἐτιμῶντο	τιμηθήσονται	ἐτιμήθησαν

	Subjunctive		Optative	
	Present	Aorist	Present	Aorist
Active	τιμῶ	τιμήσω	τιμῴην	τιμήσαιμι
	τιμᾷς	τιμήσῃς	τιμῴης	τιμήσαιο
	τιμᾷ	τιμήσῃ	τιμῴη	τιμήσαιτο
	τιμῶμεν	τιμήσωμεν	τιμῷμεν	τιμησαίμεθα
	τιμᾶτε	τιμήσητε	τιμῷτε	τιμήσαισθε
	τιμῶσι(ν)	τιμήσωσι(ν)	τιμῷεν	τιμήσαιντο
Middle	τιμῶμαι	τιμήσωμαι	τιμῴμην	τιμησαίμην
	τιμᾷ	τιμήσῃ	τιμῷο	τιμήσαιο
	τιμᾶται	τιμήσηται	τιμῷτο	τιμήσαιτο
	τιμώμεθα	τιμησώμεθα	τιμῴμεθα	τιμησαίμεθα
	τιμᾶσθε	τιμήσησθε	τιμῷσθε	τιμήσαισθε
	τιμῶνται	τιμήσωνται	τιμῷντο	φτιμήσαιντο
Passive	τιμῶμαι	τιμηθῷ	τιμῳμην	τιμηθείην
	τιμᾷ	τιμηθῇς	τιμῷο	τιμηθείης
	τιμᾶται	τιμηθῇ	τιμῷτο	τιμηθείη
	τιμώμεθα	τιμηθῶμεν	τιμῴμεθα	τιμηθεῖμεν
	τιμᾶσθε	τιμηθῆτε	τιμῷσθε	τιμηθεῖτε
	τιμῶνται	τιμηθῶσι(ν)	τιμῷντο	τιμηθεῖεν

Infinitives

	Infinitives: Summary		
	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	παύειν *to stop*	παύεσθαι *to cease from*	παύεσθαι *to be stopped*
Future	παύσειν *to be about to stop*	παύσεσθαι *to be about to cease from*	παυσθήσεσθαι *to be about to be stopped*
Aorist	παῦσαι *to stop*	παύσασθαι *to cease from*	παυσθῆναι *to be stopped*
Strong aorist	λαβεῖν *to take*	(rare)	(rare)

	Infinitives: -εω verbs			Infinitives: -αω verbs		
	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**	**Active**	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	φιλεῖν	φιλεῖσθαι	φιλεῖσθαι	τιμᾶν	τιμᾶσθαι	τιμᾶσθαι
Future	φιλήσειν	φιλήσεσθαι	φιληθήσεσθαι	τιμήσειν	τιμήσεσθαι	τιμηθήσεσθαι
Aorist	φιλῆσαι	φιλήσασθαι	φιληθῆναι	τιμῆσαι	τιμήσασθαι	τιμηθῆναι

Participles

	Participles: Summary		
	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	παύων *stopping*	παυόμενος *ceasing*	παυόμενος *being stopped*
Future	παύσων *about to stop*	παυσόμενος *about to cease*	παυσθησόμενος *about to be stopped*
Aorist	παύσας *having stopped*	παυσάμενος *having ceased*	παυσθείς *having been stopped*

Present Participle Actıve				
παύων – stopping				
		m.	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	παύων	παύουσα	παῦον
	acc	παύοντα	παύουσαν	παῦον
	gen	παύοντος	παυούσης	παύοντος
	dat	παύοντι	παυούσῃ	παύοντι
plural	nom	παύοντες	παύουσαι	παύοντα
	acc	παύοντας	παυούσας	παύοντα
	gen	παυόντων	παυουσῶν	παυόντων
	dat	παύουσι(ν)	παυούσαις	παύουσι(ν)

		Aorist Participle Active παύσας – having ceased			Aorist Participle Passive παυσθείς, παυσθέντος – having been stopped		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**	**m.**	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	παύσας	παύσασα	παῦσαν	παυσθείς	παυσθεῖσα	παυσθέν
	acc	παύσαντα	παύσασαν	παύσαν	παυσθέντα	παυσθεῖσαν	παυσθέν
	gen	παύσαντος	παύσαντος	παύσαντος	παυσθέντος	παυσθείσης	παυσθέντος
	dat	παύσαντι	παυσάσῃ	παύσαντι	παυσθέντι	παυσθείσῃ	παυσθέντι
plural	nom	παύσαντες	παύσασαι	παύσαντα	παυσθέντες	παυσθεῖσαι	παυσθέντα
	acc	παύσαντας	παυσάσας	παύσαντα	παυσθέντας	παυσθείσας	παυσθέντα
	gen	παυσάντων	παυσασῶν	παυσάντων	παυσθέντων	παυσθεισῶν	παυσθέντων
	dat	παύσασι(ν)	παυσάσαις	παύσασι(ν)	παυσθεῖσι(ν)	παυσθείσαις	παυσθεῖσι(ν)

		Participles: -εω verbs			Participles: -αω verbs		
		Active	**Middle**	**Passive**	**Active**	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	m. f. n.	φιλῶν, φιλοῦσα, φιλοῦν	φιλούμενος, φιλουμένη, φιλούμενον	φιλούμενος, φιλουμένη, φιλούμενον	τιμῶν, τιμῶσα, τιμῶν	τιμώμενος, τιμωμένη, τιμώμενον	τιμώμενος, τιμωμένη, τιμώμενον
Future	m. f. n.	φιλήσων, φιλησοῦσα, φιλήσον	φιλησόμενος, φιλησομένη, φιλησόμενον	φιλησόμενος, φιλησομένη, φιλησόμενον	τιμήσων, τιμησοῦσα, τιμήσον	τιμησόμενος, τιμησομένη, τιμησόμενον	τιμησόμενος, τιμησομένη, τιμησόμενον
Aorist	m. f. n.	φιλήσας, φιλήσασα, φιλήσαν	φιλησάμενος, φιλησαμένη, φιλησάμενον	φιληθείς, φιληθεῖσα, φιληθέν	τιμήσας, τιμήσασα, τιμήσαν	τιμησάμενος, τιμησαμένη, τιμησάμενον	τιμηθείς, τιμηθεῖσα, τιμηθέν

		Strong Aorist Participle λάβων, λάβοντος – having taken		
		m.	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	λάβων	λάβουσα	λάβον
	acc	λάβοντα	λάβουσαν	λάβον
	gen	λάβοντος	λαβούσης	λάβοντος
	dat	λάβοντι	λαβούσῃ	λάβοντι
plural	nom	λάβοντες	λάβουσαι	λάβοντα
	acc	λάβοντας	λαβούσας	λάβοντα
	gen	λαβόντων	λαβούσων	λαβόντων
	dat	λάβουσι(ν)	λαβούσαις	λάβουσι(ν)

Imperatives

	Imperatives		
	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	παῦε (sg.), παύετε (pl.) *stop!*	παύου (sg.), παύεσθε (pl.) *cease!*	(rare!)
Aorist	παῦσον (sg.), παύσατε (pl.) *stop!*	παῦσαι (sg.), παύσασθε (pl.) *cease!*	(rare!)

	Imperatives: -εω verbs			Imperatives: -αω verbs		
	Active	**Middle**	**Passive**	**Active**	**Middle**	**Passive**
Present	φίλει, φιλεῖτε	φιλοῦ, φιλεῖσθε	φιλοῦ, φιλεῖσθε	τιμᾶ, τιμᾶτε	τιμῶ, τιμᾶσθε	τιμῶ, τιμᾶσθε
Aorist	φίλησον, φιλήσατε	φίλησαι, φιλήσασθαι	φιλήθητι, φιλήθητε	τίμησον, τιμήσατε	τίμησαι, τιμήσασθε	τιμήθητι, τιμήθητε

Irregular Verbs

εἰμί – I am					
Present I am	**Imperfect** I was	**Future** I will be	**Subjunctive**	**Optative**	**Infinitive** εἶναι, to be
εἰμί	ἦν or ἤ	ἔσομαι	ὦ	εἴην	
εἶ	ἦσθα	ἔση or ἐσει	ᾖς	εἴης	**Imperatives**
ἐστί(ν)	ἦν	ἔσται	ᾖ	εἴη	sg: ἴσθι Be!
ἐσμέν	ἦμεν	ἐσόμεθα	ὦμεν	εἶμεν	pl: ἔστε Be!
ἐστέ	ἦτε	ἔσεσθε	ἦτε	εἶτε	
εἰσί(ν)	ἦσαν	ἔσονται	ὦσι(ν)	εἶεν	

Present Participle Active				
ὤν – being				
		m.	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	ὤν	οὖσα	ὄν
	acc	ὄντα	οὖσαν	ὄν
	gen	ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος
	dat	ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι
plural	nom	ὄντες	οὖσαι	ὄντα
	acc	ὄντας	οὔσας	ὄντα
	gen	ὄντων	οὐσῶν	ὄντων
	dat	οὖσι(ν)	οὔσαις	οὖσι(ν)

δίδωμι – I give		
Present I give	**Future** I shall give	**Aorist** I gave
δίδωμι	δώσω	ἔδωκα
δίδως	δώσεις	ἔδωκας
δίδωσι(ν)	δώσει	ἔδωκε(ν)
δίδομεν	δώσομεν	ἔδομεν
δίδοτε	δώσετε	ἔδοτε
διδόασι(ν)	δώσουσι(ν)	ἔδωκαν
	Infinitives	
	present	διδόναι
	future	δώσειν
	aorist	δοῦναι

οἶδα – I know	
Present	**Imperfect**
οἶδα	ᾔδη
οἶσθα	ᾔδησθα
οἶδε(ν)	ᾔδει(ν)
ἴσμεν	ᾖσμεν
ἴστε	ᾖστε
ἴσασι(ν)	ᾖσαν
Infinitive	εἰδέναι to know

	Participle – knowing			
		m.	**f.**	**n.**
singular	nom	εἰδώς	εἰδυῖα	εἰδός
	acc	εἰδότα	εἰδυῖαν	εἰδός
	gen	εἰδότος	εἰδυίας	εἰδότος
	dat	εἰδότι	εἰδυίᾳ	εἰδότι
plural	nom	εἰδότες	εἰδυῖαι	εἰδότα
	acc	εἰδότας	εἰδυίας	εἰδότα
	gen	εἰδότων	εἰδυιῶν	εἰδότων
	dat	εἰδόσι(ν)	εἰδυίαις	εἰδόσι(ν)

εἶμι – I go	
Present I go	**Present Participle** going
εἶμι	**m.** ἰών, ἰόντος
εἶ	**f.** ἰοῦσα, ἰούσης
εἶσι(ν)	**n.** ἰόν, ἰόντος
ἴμεν	
ἴτε	**Infinitive** ἰέναι to go
ἴασι(ν)	

Table of Verbs

Present	English	Future	Aorist	Aorist Passive
ἀγγέλλω	announce	ἀγγελῶ	ἤγγειλα	ἠγγέλθην
ἄγω	lead	ἄξω	ἤγαγον	ἤχθην
ἀδικέω	do wrong, injure	ἀδικήσω	ἠδίκησα	ἠδικήθην
αἱρέω	take (in the hand)	αἱρήσω	εἷλον	ᾑρέθην
αἰσθάνομαι	notice	αἰσθήσομαι	ἠσθόμην	
αἰτέω	ask, ask for	αἰτήσω	ᾔτησα	
ἄκουω	hear, listen to	ἀκούσομαι	ἤκουσα	ἠκούσθην
ἀναγκάζω	force	ἀναγκάσω	ἠνάγκασα	ἠναγκάσθην
ἀναχωρέω	retreat	ἀναχωρήσω	ἀνεχώρησα	
ἀποθνῄσκω	die, am killed	ἀποθανοῦμαι	ἀπέθανον	
ἀποκρίνομαι	answer, reply	ἀποκρινοῦμαι	ἀπεκρινάμην	
ἀποκτείνω	kill	ἀποκτενῶ	ἀπέκτεινα	
ἄρχομαι	begin	ἄρξομαι	ἠρξάμην	
ἄρχω	rule	ἄρξω	ἦρξα	ἤρχθην
ἀφικνέομαι	arrive	ἀφίξομαι	ἀφικόμην	
βαίνω	go	βήσομαι	ἔβην	
βάλλω	throw	βαλῶ	ἔβαλον	ἐβλήθην
βλάπτω	harm	βλάψω	ἔβλαψα	ἐβλάφθην / ἐβλάβην
βοάω	shout	βοήσω	ἐβόησα	ἐβοήθην
βοηθέω + dat.	help	βοηθήσω	ἐβοήθησα	
βούλομαι	wish, want	βουλήσομαι	ἐβουλήθην	
γελάω	laugh	γελάσομαι	ἐγέλασα	
γίγνομαι	become	γενήσομαι	ἐγενόμην	
γιγνώσκω	know	γνώσομαι	ἔγνων	ἐγνώσθην
γράφω	write	γράψω	ἔγραψα	ἐγράφην
δακρύω	cry	δακρῦσω	ἐδάκρυσα	
δέχομαι	receive	δέξομαι	ἐδεξάμην	ἐδέχθην
διαφθείρω	destroy	διαφθερῶ	διέφθειρα	διεφθάρην
διδάσκω	teach	διδάξω	ἐδίδαξα	ἐδιδάχθην
δίδωμι	give	δώσω	ἔδωκα	ἐδόθην
διώκω	chase	διώξω	ἐδίωξα	ἐδιώχθην
ἐθέλω	wish	ἐθελήσω	ἠθέλησα	
εἰμί	be	ἔσομαι	impf: ἦν	
εἶμι	go			
εἰσβάλλω	invade	εἰσβαλῶ	εἰσέβαλον	
ἐκφεύγω	escape	ἐκφεύξομαι	ἐξέφυγον	
ἐλπίζω	hope	ἐλπιῶ	ἤλπισα	
ἕπομαι + dat.	follow	ἕψομαι	ἑσπόμην	
ἔρχομαι	go, come	εἶμι	ἦλθον	
ἐρωτάω	ask	ἐρήσομαι/ ἐρωτήσω	ἠρόμην/ ἠρώτησα	
ἐσθῖω	eat	ἔδομαι	ἔφαγον	
εὑρισκω	find	εὑρήσω	ηὗρον	ηὑρέθην
ἔχω	have, hold	ἕξω/σχήσω	ἔσχον impf: εἶχον	
ζητέω	seek	ζητήσω	ἐζήτησα	ἐζητήθην
θάπτω	bury	θάψω	ἔθαψα	ἐτάφην
θαυμάζω	am amazed at	θαυμάσομαι	ἐθαύμασα	ἐθαυμάσθην
θεραπεύω	worship, care for	θεραπεύσω	ἐθεράπευσα	ἐθεραπεύθην
θύω	sacrifice	θύσω	ἔθυσα	ἐτύθην
καθεύδω	sleep	καθευδήσω	καθηῦδον	
καθίζω	sit	καθιῶ	ἐκάθισα	
καίω	burn, set on fire	καύσω	ἔκαυσα	ἐκαύθην
καλέω	call	καλῶ	ἐκάλεσα	ἐκλήθην
κελεύω	order	κελεύσω	ἐκέλευσα	ἐκελεύσθην
κλέπτω	steal	κλέψω	ἔκλεψα	ἐκλάπην
κολάζω	punish	κολάσω	ἐκόλασα	ἐκολάσθην
κόπτω	cut down	κόψω	ἔκοψα	
κρύπτω	hide	κρύψω	ἔκρυψα	ἐκρύφθην
κτάομαι	obtain, get	κτήσομαι	ἐκτησάμην	ἐκτήθην

Present	English	Future	Aorist	Aorist Passive
κωλύω	prevent, hinder	κωλύσω	ἐκώλυσα	ἐκωλύθην
λαμβάνω	take, capture	λήψομαι	ἔλαβον	ἐλήφθην
λέγω	say, speak	λέξω/ἐρῶ	εἶπον / ἔλεξα	ἐλέχθην
λείπω	leave	λείψω	ἔλιπον	ἐλείφθην
λύω	release	λύσω	ἔλυσα	ἐλύθην
μανθάνω	learn	μαθήσομαι	ἔμαθον	
μάχομαι	fight	μαχοῦμαι	ἐμαχεσάμην	
μέλλω + fut. infin.	intend, am going to	μελλήσω	ἐμέλλησα	
μένω	stay, wait for, wait	μενέω	ἔμεινα	
μισέω	hate	μισήσω	ἐμίσησα	ἐμισήθην
νικάω	conquer	νικήσω	ἐνίκησα	ἐνικήθην
νομίζω	think	νομίω	ἐνόμισα	
οἶδα	know			
οἰκέω	live in	οἰκήσω	ᾤκησα	
ὁράω	see	ὄψομαι	εἶδον	ὤφθην
ὀργίζομαι + dat.	get angry (with)	ὀργιοῦμαι	ὠργίσθην	
παιδεύω	train, educate	παιδεύσω	ἐπαίδευσα	ἐπαιδεύθην
παρασκευάζω	prepare	παρασκευάσω	παρεσκεύασα	παρεσκευάσθην
παρέχω	provide	παρέξω/ παρασχήσω	παρέσκον	
πάσχω	suffer	πείσομαι	ἔπαθον	
παύομαι	cease from	παύσομαι	ἐπαυσάμην	
παύω	stop	παύσω	ἔπαυσα	ἐπαύσθην
πείθομαι	obey	πείσομαι	ἐπιθόμην	
πείθω + dat.	persuade	πείσω	ἔπεισα	ἐπείσθην
πειράομαι	try	πειράσομαι	ἐπειρασάμην	
πέμπω	send	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	ἐπέμφθην
πίνω	drink	πίομαι	ἔπιον	ἐπόθην
πίπτω	fall	πεσοῦμαι	ἔπεσον	
πιστεύω + dat.	trust, believe	πιστεύσω	ἐπίστευσα	
πλέω	sail	πλεύσομαι	ἔπλευσα	ἐπλεύσθην
ποιέω	do, make	ποιήσω	ἐποίησα	ἐποιήθην
πορεύομαι	march, travel	πορεύσομαι	ἐπορευσάμην	
πράσσω	do	πράξω	ἔπραξα	ἐπράχθην
προσβάλλω	attack	προσβαλῶ	προσέβαλον	
πυνθάνομαι	learn, ascertain, ask	πεύσομαι	ἐπυθόμην	
στρατεύω	march	στρατεύσω	ἐστράτευσα	
συλλέγω	collect	συλλέξω	συνέλεξα	συνελέχθην
σῴζω	save	σώσω	ἔσωσα	ἐσώθην
τάσσω	arrange	τάξω	ἔταξα	ἐτάχθην
τιμάω	honour	τιμήσω	ἐτίμησα	ἐτιμήθην
τρέχω	run	δραμοῦμαι	ἔδραμον	
ὑπισχνέομαι	promise	ὑποσχήσομαι	ὑπεσχόμην	
φαίνομαι	seem, appear	φανοῦμαι	ἐφάνην	
φέρω	bring, carry	οἴσω	ἤνεγκον/ἤνεγκα	ἠνέχθην
φεύγω	flee	φεύξομαι	ἔφυγον	
φημί	say	φήσω	ἔφην (imperf.)	
φιλέω	love	φιλήσω	ἐφιλήσα	ἐφιλήθην
φοβέομαι	fear	φοβήσομαι	ἐφοβήθην	
φονεύω	murder	φονεύσω	ἐφόνευσα	ἐφονεύθην
φυλάσσω	guard	φυλάξω	ἐφύλαξα	ἐφυλάχθην
χράομαι + dat.	use	χρήσομαι	ἐχρησάμην	

Abbreviations

acc.	accusative	gen.	genitive	pass.	passive
adj.	adjective	impf.	imperfect	pers.	person
adv.	adverb	indic.	indicative	pl.	plural
aor.	aorist	infin.	infinitive	pres.	present
comp.	comparative	irreg.	irregular	refl.	reflexive
dat.	dative	m.	masculine	sg.	singular
emph.	emphatic	n.	neuter	str.	strong
f.	feminine	opt.	optative	subj.	subjunctive
fut.	future	partic.	participle	superl.	superlative

English – Greek wordlist

(Further details of verbs can be found in the verb table, starting on page 238)

(open question)	ἆρα
able, I am	οἷός τ'εἰμί
about	περί + gen.
about to, I am	μέλλω + fut. infin.
admire, I	θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, ἐθαυμάσθην
afraid, I am	φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, ἐφοβήθην
after	μετά + acc.
against	ἐπί + acc.
allies	σύμμαχοι, οἱ (pl. noun)
although	καίπερ + partic.
always	ἀεί
am able, I	οἷός τ'εἰμί
am amazed at, I	θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, ἐθαυμάσθην
am willing, I	ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα
am, I	εἰμί
and	δέ (δ᾽ + vowel) (2nd word in sentence)
and	καί
angry with, grow, I	ὀργίζομαι + dat., ὀργιοῦμαι, ὠργίσθην
animal	ζῷον, ζῴου, τό
announce, I	ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα, ἠγγέλθην
appear, I	φαίνομαι, φανοῦμαι, ἐφάνην
arms	ὅπλα, ὅπλων, τά
army	στρατιά, στρατιᾶς, ἡ; στρατός, στρατοῦ, ὁ
arrange, I	τάσσω, τάξω, ἔταξα, ἐτάχθην
as	ὡς
ask, I	πυνθάνομαι, πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην; αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ᾔτησα
ask for, I	αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ᾔτησα
assemble, I	συλλέγω, συλλέξω, συνέλεξα
assembly	ἐκκλησία, ἐκκλησίας, ἡ
at	ἐπί + acc.
at any rate	γε
at first	πρῶτον
Athenians, the	Ἀθηναῖοι, Ἀθηναίων, οἱ (pl. noun)
Athens	Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηνῶν, αἱ (pl. noun)
at last	τέλος
at least	γε (never first in a clause)
attack, I	προσβάλλω, προσβαλῶ, προσέβαλον + dat.
bad	κακός, -η, -ον
barbarians	βάρβαροι, βαρβάρων, οἱ (pl. noun)
battle	μάχη, μάχης, ἡ
beautiful	καλός, -η, -ον
because	διότι; ὡς
because of	διά + acc.

before	πρότερον
begin, I	ἄρχομαι, ἄρξομαι, ἠρξάμην
beginning	ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ
believe, I	πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα + dat.
better (adj.)	ἀμείνων
better (adv.)	ἀμείνον
boat	πλοῖον, πλοίου, τό
body	σῶμα, σώματος, τό
book	βίβλος, βίβλου, ἡ
both... and...	τε (...) καί
bow	τόξον, τόξου, τό
boy	παῖς, παιδός, ὁ
brave	ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον
bring, I	φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεγκα/ ἤνεγκον, ἠνέχθην
brother	ἀδελφός, ἀδελφοῦ, ὁ
burn, I	καίω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα, ἐκαύθην
bury, I	θάπτω, θάψω, ἔθαψα, ἐτάφην
but	δέ (δ’ + vowel) (2nd word in sentence)
but	ἀλλά
by	ὑπό + gen.
camp	στρατόπεδον, στρατοπέδου, τό
can, I	οἷός τ'εἰμί
capture, I	λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, ἐλήφθην
cargo ship	πλοῖον, πλοίου, τό
care for, I	θεραπεύω, θεραπεύσω, ἐθεραπεύσα, ἐθεραπεύθην
carry, I	φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεγκα/ ἤνεγκον, ἠνέχθην
catch, I	λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, ἐλήφθην
cavalry	ἱππεῖς, ἱππέων, οἱ
cavalryman	ἱππεύς, ἱππέως, ὁ
certain, a	τις, τι
chase, I	διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα, ἐδιώχθην
child	παῖς, παιδός, ὁ/ἡ; τέκνον, τό
citizen	πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ
city	πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ
collect, I	συλλέγω, συλλέξω, συνέλεξα, συνελέχθην
come, I	ἔρχομαι, εἶμι, ἦλθον
community	δῆμος, δήμου, ὁ
concerning	περί + gen.
contest	ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ
corpse	νεκρός, νεκροῦ, ὁ
cross, I	διαβαίνω, διαβήσομαι, διέβην
cry, I	δακρύω, δακρῦσω, ἐδάκρυσα
cure, I	θεραπεύω, θεραπεύσω, ἐθεράπευσα, ἐθεραπεύθην
custom	νόμος, νόμου, ὁ
cut down, I	κόπτω, κόψω, ἔκοψα
damage, I	βλάπτω, βλάψω, ἔβλαψα, ἐβλάφθην/ἐβλάβην
danger	κίνδυνος, κινδύνου, ὁ
dangerous	χαλεπός, -η, -ον
daughter	παῖς, παιδός, ἡ
day	ἡμέρα, ἡμέρας, ἡ
death	θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ
deed	ἔργον, ἔργου, τό
despite	καίπερ + partic.
destroy, I	διαφθείρω, διαφθερῶ, διέφθειρα, διεφθάρην
die, I	ἀποθνήσκω, ἀποθανοῦμαι, ἀπέθανον
difficult	χαλεπός, -η, -ον
dinner	δεῖπνον, δείπνου, τό
disaster	συμφορά, συμφορᾶς, ἡ
disease	νόσος, νόσου, ἡ
disgraceful	αἰσχρός, -α, -ον

do, I	πράσσω, πράξω, ἔπραξα, ἐπράχθην
do well, I	εὖ πράσσω, πράξω, ἔπραξα, ἐπράχθην
doctor	ἰατρός, ἰατροῦ, ὁ
do not....!	μή + imperative
door	θύρα, θύρας, ἡ
do wrong, I	ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω, ἠδίκησα, ἠδικήθην
drink, I	πίνω, πίομαι, ἔπιον, ἐπόθην
each	ἕκαστος, -η, -ον
earth	γῆ, γῆς, ἡ
easy	ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον
eat, I	ἐσθίω, ἔδομαι, ἔφαγον
eight	ὀκτώ
either... or...	ἤ... ἤ...
empire	ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ
enemy, the	πολέμιοι, πολεμίων, οἱ (pl. noun)
enemy (personal)	ἐχθρός, ἐχθροῦ, ὁ
escape, I	ἐκφεύγω, ἐκφεύξομαι, ἐξέφυγον
evening	ἑσπέρα, ἑσπέρας, ἡ
evil	κακός, -η, -ον
except	πλήν + gen.
fall, I	πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον
fast (adj.)	ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ
fast (adv)	ταχέως
father	πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ
fear	φόβος, φόβου, ὁ
fear, I	φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, ἐφοβήθην
fifth	πέμπτος, -ή, -όν
fight, I	μάχομαι, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην
find, I	εὑρίσκω, εὑρήσω, ηὗρον, ηὑρέθην
find out, I	πυνθάνομαι, πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην
fine	καλός, -ή, -όν
fire	πῦρ, πυρός, τό
first	πρῶτος, -ή, -όν
first, at	πρῶτον
five	πέντε
flee, I	φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον
fleet	ναυτικόν, ναυτικοῦ, τό
follow, I	ἕπομαι + dat., ἕψομαι,ἐσπόμην
food	σῖτος, σίτου, ὁ
foolish	μῶρος, -η, -ον
foot	πούς, ποδός, ὁ
for	γάρ (2nd word in sentence)
force	βία, βίας, ἡ
force, I	ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, ἠνάγκασα, ἠναγκάσθην
foreigners	βάρβαροι, βαρβάρων, οἱ (pl. noun)
forest	ὕλη, ὕλης, ἡ
formerly	πάλαι
fortunate	εὐτυχής, -ής, -ές
four	τέσσαρες, τέσσαρες, τέσσαρα
fourth	τέταρτος, -ή, -όν
free	ἐλεύθερος, -α, -ον
friend (female)	φίλη, -ης, ἡ
friend (male)	φίλος, φίλου, ὁ
friendly	φίλιος, -α, -ον
from	ἀπό + gen.
from where?	πόθεν;
front of, in	πρό + gen.
gate	πύλη, πύλης, ἡ
general	στρατηγός, στρατηγοῦ, ὁ
get away safely, I	σῴζομαι

gift	δῶρον, δώρου, τό
girl	παῖς, παιδός, ἡ
girlfriend	φίλη, φίλης, ἡ
give, I	δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, ἐδόθην
go, I	βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην; ἔρχομαι (irreg.), εἶμι, ἦλθον
god	θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ
goddess	θεά, θεᾶς, ἡ
gold	χρύσος, χρύσου, ὁ
good	ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν
goods	χρήματα, χρημάτων, τά (pl. noun)
great	μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα
Greece	Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ
Greek	Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ
guard	φύλαξ, φύλακος, ὁ
guard, I	φυλάσσω,φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, ἐφυλάχθην
guilty of	αἴτιος + gen.
hand	χείρ, χειρός, ἡ
handsome	καλός, -ή, -όν
harbour	λιμήν, λιμένος, ὁ
harm, I	βλάπτω, βλάψω, ἔβλαψα, ἐβλάφθην/ἐβλάβην
have, I	ἔχω, ἕξω/σχήσω, ἔσχον (impf: εἶχον)
head	κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ
hear, I	ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἠκούσθην
heaven	οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ
heel, I	θεραπεύω, θεραπεύσω, ἐθεράπευσα, ἐθεραπεύθην
her	αὐτήν
her(s)	αὐτῆς
here	ἐνθάδε
hide, I (something)	κρύπτω, κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, ἐκρύφθην
hide, I (myself)	κρύπτομαι, κρύψομαι, ἐκρυψάμην, ἐκρύφθην
high	ὑψηλός, ὑψηλή, ὑψηλόν
him	αὐτόν
himself (reflex.)	ἑαυτόν
himself (emph.)	αὐτόν
hinder, I	κωλύω, κωλύσω, ἐκώλυσα, ἐκωλύθην + infin.
hit (someone with), I	βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, ἐβλήθην
hold, I	ἔχω, ἕξω/σχήσω (impf: εἶχον)
homeland	πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ
honour	τίμη, τίμης, ἡ
honour, I	τιμάω,τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα, ἐτιμήθην; θεραπεύω
hope, I	ἐλπίζω, ἐλπιῶ, ἤλπισα
horse	ἵππος, ὁ
hostile	ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν
house	οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ
how?	πῶς;
how big	πόσος, πόση, πόσον;
however	μέντοι
how many?	πόσοι, πόσαι, πόσα
how much?	πόσος, πόση, πόσον;
I	ἐγώ
if	εἰ + indic. ; ἐαν + fut. subj. (see p.210)
illness	νόσος, νόσου, ἡ
immediately	εὐθύς
in	ἐν + dat.
indeed	δή
in front of	πρό + gen.
inhabitant	ἔνοικος, ἐνοίκου, ὁ
injure, I	ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω, ἠδίκησα, ἠδικήθην
in the past	πάλαι
into	εἰς + acc.
invade, I	εἰσβάλλω, εἰσβαλῶ, εἰσέβαλον

island	νήσος, νήσου, ἡ
journey	ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ
judge	κριτής, κριτοῦ, ὁ
just	δίκαιος, -α, -ον
kill, I	ἀποκτείνω, ἀποκτενῶ, ἀπέκτεινα
kill, I	φονεύω, φονεύσω, ἐφόνευσα, ἐφονεύθην
king	βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ
know, I	γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἐγνώσθην; οἶδα
land	γῆ, γῆς, ἡ
land	χώρα, χώρας, ἡ
language	γλῶσσα, γλώσσης, ἡ,
later	ὕστερον
laugh, I	γελάω, γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα
law	νόμος, νόμου, ὁ
lead, I	ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον, ἦχθην
leader	ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος, ὁ
learn, I	πυνθάνομαι, πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην
leave, I	ἀπέρχομαι, ἄπειμι, ἀπῆλθον
leave (behind), I	λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον, ἐλείφθην
letter	ἐπιστολή, ἐπιστολῆς, ἡ
life	βίος, βίου, ὁ
like, I	φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφιλήσα, ἐφιλήθην
listen to, I	ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἠκούσθην
long	μακρός, -α, -ον
look after, I	θεραπεύω, θεραπεύσω, ἐθεράπευσα, ἐθεραπεύθην
long ago	πάλαι
love, I	φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφιλήσα, ἐφιλήθην
lucky	εὐτυχής, εὐτυχής, εὐτυχές
magistrate	ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ
man	ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ
man	ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ
manage, I	πράσσω, πράξω, ἔπραξα, ἐπράχθην
many	πολύς, πολλή, πολύ
march, I	στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα
market place	ἀγορά, ἀγορᾶς, ἡ
master	δεσπότης, δεσπότου, ὁ
me	ἐμέ
meal	δεῖπνον, δείπνου, τό
messenger	ἄγγελος, ἀγγέλλου, ὁ
money	χρήματα, χρημάτων, τά (pl. noun)
mother	μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ
mountain	ὄρος, ὄρους, τό
much	πολύς, πολλή, πολύ
murder, I	φονεύω, φονεύσω, ἐφόνευσα, ἐφονεύθην
must/it is compulsory	δεῖ (see p.179)
name	ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό
native land	πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ
necessary, it is	χρή (see p.179)
neither... nor...	οὐτε... οὐτε..., μήτε... μήτε...
never	οὐδέποτε, μηδέποτε
new	νέος, νέα, νέον
night	νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ
nine	ἐννέα
no	οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν; μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν
no-one	οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν; μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν
not	μή
not	οὐ / οὐκ / οὐχ
nothing	οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν; μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν

now	νῦν
o....	ὦ...
often	πολλάκις
old man	γέρων, γέροντος, ὁ
on	ἐν + dat.
on	ἐπί + acc.
on the one hand... but on the other hand...	μέν... δέ...
one	εἷς, μία, ἕν
onto	ἐπί + acc.
or	ἤ
order, I	κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, ἐκελεύσθην
our	ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον
ourselves (refl.)	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς (m.) ἡμᾶς αὐτάς (f.)
ourselves (emph.)	αὐτούς (m.); αὐτάς (f.)
out of	ἐκ (ἐξ before a vowel) + gen.
peace	εἰρήνη, εἰρήνης, ἡ
people	δῆμος, δήμου, ὁ
permitted, it is	ἔξεστι (see p.179)
persuade, I	πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, ἐπείσθην + dat.
place	τόπος, τόπου, ὁ
poet	ποιητής, ποιητοῦ, ὁ
power	ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ
prepare, I	παρασκευάζω, παρασκευάσω, παρεσκεύασα, παρεσκευάσθην
prevent (someone from doing something), I	κωλύω, κωλύσω, ἐκώλυσα, ἐκωλύθην + infin.
prisoner	αἰχμάλωτος, αἰχμαλώτου, ὁ
prize	ἆθλον, ἄθλου, τό
proper	δίκαιος, -α, -ον
property	χρήματα, χρημάτων, τά (pl. noun)
prosper, I	εὖ πράσσω, πράξω, ἔπραξα, ἐπράχθην
provide, I	παρέχω, παρέξω/παρασχήσω, παρέσκον
punish, I	κολάζω, κολάσω, ἐκόλασα, ἐκολάσθην
pursue, I	διώκω, διώξω, ἐδίωξα, ἐδιώχθην
ready	ἑτοῖμος, -η, -ον
realise, I	γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἐγνώσθην
receive, I	δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, ἐδέχθην
release, I	λυώ, λύσω, ἔλυσα, ἐλύθην
remain, I	μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα
reply	ἀποκρίνομαι, ἀποκρινοῦμαι, ἀπεκρινάμην
responsible for	αἴτιος + gen.
rich	πλούσιος, -α, -ον
right	δίκαιος, -α, -ον
river	ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ
road	ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ
rule, I	ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἦρξα, ἤρχθην + gen.
ruler	ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ
run away, I	φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον
run, I	τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον
sacrifice, I	θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσα, ἐτύθην
safe	ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλές
said, he/she	ἔφη
sail, I	πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, ἐπλεύσθην
sailor	ναύτης, ναύτου, ὁ
same, the	ὁ αὐτος, ἡ αὐτη, τὸ αὐτο
save, I	σῳζω, σώσω, ἔσωσα, ἐσώθην
say, I	λέγω, λέξω/ἐρῶ, εἶπον/ἔλεξα, ἐλέχθην; φημί
sea	θάλασσα, θαλάσσης, ἡ

sea battle	ναυμαχία, ναυμαχίας, ἡ
second	δεύτερος, -α, -ον
see, I	ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ὤφθην
seem, I	φαίνομαι, φανοῦμαι, ἐφάνην
seems good, it	δοκεῖ (see p.179)
-self; him, her, it, them	αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό
send, I	πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, ἐπέμφθην
seven	ἕπτα
shameful	αἰσχρός, -α, -ον
shield	ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ἡ
ship	ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ
short time, in a	δι᾽ ὀλίγου
shout	βοή, βοῆς, ἡ
silence	σιγή, σιγῆς, ἡ
sit, I	καθίζω, καθιῶ, ἐκάθισα
six	ἕξ
sky	οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ
slave	δοῦλος, δούλου, ὁ
sleep	ὕπνος, ὕπνου, ὁ
sleep, I	καθεύδω, καθευδήσω, καθηῦδον
slow	βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ
small	μικρός, -α, -ον
so	οὕτω(ς)
so big, so great	τοσοῦτος, -η, -ον
soldier	στρατιώτης, στρατιώτου, ὁ
so many	τοσοῦτοι, -αι, -α
someone	τις, τινός
some... others...	οἱ μὲν... οἱ δὲ...
something	τι, τινός
son	παῖς, παιδός, ὁ
soon	δι᾽ ὀλίγου
sound	φωνή, φωνῆς, ἡ
Spartans, the	Λακεδαιμόνιοι, Λακεδαιμονίων, οἱ (pl. noun)
speak, I	λέξω/ἐρῶ, εἶπον/ἔλεξα, ἐλέχθην
state	πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ
stay, I	μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα
steal, I	κλέπτω, κλέψω, ἔκλεψα, ἐκλάπην
still	ἔτι
stone	λίθος, λίθου, ὁ
stop, I	παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, ἐπαύσθην
storm	χειμών, χειμῶνος, ὁ
story	μῦθος, μύθου, ὁ
strange	δεινός, -η, -ον
stranger	ξένος, ξένου, ὁ
street	ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ
strength	βία, βίας, ἡ
strong	ἰσχυρός, -α, -ον
stupid	μῶρος, -α, -ον
successful, I am	εὖ πράσσω, πράξω, ἔπραξα, ἐπράχθην
such, of such a kind	τοιοῦτος, -η, -ον
sun	ἥλιος, ἡλίου, ὁ
sweet	ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδύ
sword	ξίφος, ξίφους, τό
take, I	λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, ἐλήφθην
take (in the hand), I	αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, εἷλον, ἡρέθην
task	ἔργον, ἔργου, τό
teach, I	διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, ἐδιδάχθην
teacher	διδάσκαλος, διδασκάλου, ὁ
tell, I	λέγω, λέξω/ἐρῶ, εἶπον/ἔλεξα, ἐλέχθην; διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, ἐδιδάχθην
temple	ἱερόν, ἱεροῦ, τό
ten	δέκα

terrible	δεινός, -ή, -όν
than	ἤ
that	ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο
that (with the result that)	ὥστε
the	ὁ, ἡ, τό
their	αὐτῶν
themselves (refl.)	ἑαυτούς (m.); ἑαυτάς (f.)
themselves (emph.)	αὐτοί (m.); αὐταί (f.)
then	τότε
then, next	ἔπειτα
there	ἐκεῖ
therefore	οὖν (2nd word in sentence)
these	οὗτοι, αὗται, ταῦτα
think, I	νομίζω, νομίω, ἐνόμισα
third	τρίτος, -η, -ον
this	οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο
those	ἐκεῖνοι, ἐκεῖναι, ἐκεῖνα
three	τρεῖς, τρεῖς, τρία
through	διά + gen.
throw, I	βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, ἐβλήθην
throw into, I	εἰσβάλλω, εἰσβαλῶ, εἰσέβαλον
time	χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ
to such an extent	εἰς τοσοῦτον
to where?	ποῖ;
tongue	γλῶσσα, γλώσσης, ἡ
to(wards)	πρός + acc.
train, I	παιδεύω, παιδεύσω, ἐπαίδευσα, ἐπαιδεύθην
tree	δένδρον, δένδρου, τό
trial	ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ
trust, I	πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα + dat.
trustworthy	πιστός, -ή, -όν
try, I	πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, ἐπειρασάμην
two	δύο
ugly	αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν
understand, I	γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἐγνώσθην
unjust	ἄδικος, -ος, -ον
unlucky	δυστυχής, δυστυχής, δυστυχές
until	ἕως
use, I	χράομαι + dat., χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην
useful	χρήσιμος, -η, -ον
very much	μάλιστα
victory	νίκη, νίκης, ἡ
village	κωμή, κωμῆς, ἡ
voice	φωνή, φωνής, ἡ
wait, I	μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα
wall	τεῖχος, τείχους, τό
want, I	ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα; βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, ἐβουλήθην
war	πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ
water	ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό
way	ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ
weak	ἀσθενής, ἀσθενής, ἀσθενές
weapons	ὅπλα, ὅπλων, τά
well	εὖ
what?	τίς; τί; ὅ τι
what sort of	ποῖος, -α, -ον; ὁποῖος, -α, -ον
when	ὡς
when?	πότε; ὁπότε
where?	ποῦ; ὅπου
where from	ὁπόθεν

where (to)	ὅποι
whether	εἰ
whether... or...	πότερον... ἤ...
which?	τίς; τί;
while	ἕως
who?	τίς; τί; ὅστις
whom?	τινά; (sg.) τινάς; (pl.)
whose	οὗ (m. sg.); ἧς (f. sg.); ὧν (pl.)
whose?	τινός; (sg.); τινῶν; (pl.)
why?	διὰ τί;
wicked	κακός, -ή, -όν
wide	εὐρῦς, εὐρεῖα, εὐρύ
wife	γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ
wind	ἄνεμος, ἀνέμου ὁ
wine	οἶνος, οἴνου, ὁ
wisdom	σοφία, σοφίας, ἡ
wise	σοφός, -ή, -όν
wish, I	ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα; βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, ἐβουλήθην
with	μετά + gen.
without	ἄνευ + gen.
with the result that	ὥστε
woman	γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ
wood	ὕλη, ὕλης, ἡ
word	λόγος, λόγου, ὁ
work	ἔργον, ἔργου, τό
worship, I	θεραπεύω, θεραπεύσω, ἐθεραπεύσα, ἐθεραπεύθην
write, I	γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, ἐγράφην
year	ἔτος, ἔτους, τό
you (sg.)	σύ
you (pl.)	ὑμεῖς
your (sg.)	ὁ σός, ἡ σή, τὸ σόν
your (pl.)	ὑμέτερος, -α, -ον
young man	νεανίας, νεανίου, ὁ
Zeus	Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ

Greek – English wordlist

(Further details of verbs can be found in the verb table, starting on page 238)

A

ἀγαθός, -η, -ον	good
ἀγγέλλω	I announce
ἄγγελος, ἀγγέλου, ὁ	messenger
ἀγορά, ἀγορᾶς, ἡ	market place
ἀγρός, ἀγροῦ,ὁ	field
ἄγω	I lead
ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ	contest, trial
ἀδελφός, ἀδελφοῦ, ὁ	brother
ἀδικέω	I do wrong, I injure
ἄδικος, -ος, -ον	unjust
ἀεί	always
Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηνῶν, αἱ (pl. noun)	Athens
Ἀθηναῖοι, οἱ (pl. noun)	the Athenians
ἆθλον, ἄθλου, τό	prize
αἱρέω	I take (in the hand)
αἰσθάνομαι	I notice
αἰσχρός, -α, -ον	shameful, ugly, disgraceful
αἰτέω	I ask, ask for
αἴτιος + gen.	responsible for, guilty of
αἰχμάλωτος, αἰχμαλώτου, ὁ	prisoner
ἀκούω	I hear, listen to
ἀληθής, -ής, -ές	true
ἀλλά	but
ἄλλος, -η, -ο	other, another
ἀμείνων, -ονος	better (comp. of ἀγαθός)
ἄν	(conditional particle: see p.211)
ἀναγκάζω + acc. + infin.	I force (someone [acc.) to do [infin.] something)
ἀναχωρέω	I retreat, I withdraw
ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον	brave
ἄνεμος, ἀνέμου ὁ	wind
ἄνευ + gen.	without
ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ	man
ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ	man
ἄξιος + gen.	worthy of
ἀπέθαν-	str. aor. of ἀποθνῄσκω
ἀπέρχομαι	I go away, depart
ἀπῆλθ-	str. aor. of ἀπέρχομαι
ἀπό + gen.	from
ἀποθνῄσκω	I die
ἀποκρίνομαι	I reply
ἀποκτείνω	I kill
ἆρα	(open question)
ἄριστος, -η, -ον	best (superl. of ἀγαθός)
ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ	beginning; power, empire
ἄρχομαι	I begin
ἄρχω + gen.	I rule
ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ	ruler, magistrate
ἀσθενής, -ής, -ές	weak
ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ἡ	shield
ἀσφαλής, -ής, -ές	safe
αὖθις	again
αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	-self; him, her, it, them; the same
ἀφικνέομαι	I arrive

B

βαίνω	I go

βάλλω	I throw; hit someone with (see p.69)
βάρβαροι, οἱ (pl. noun)	foreigners, barbarians
βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ	king
βησ-	fut. of βαίνω
βία, βίας, ἡ	force, strength
βίβλος, βίβλου, ἡ	book
βίος, βίου, ὁ	life
βλάπτω	I harm, damage
βοάω	I shout
βοή, βοῆς, ἡ	shout
βοηθέω (+ dat.)	I help
βουλή, βουλῆς, ἡ	meeting, council
βούλομαι	I wish, want
βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ	slow

Γ

γάρ (2nd word in sentence)	for
γε	at any rate, at least, even
γελάω	I laugh
γέρων, γέροντος, ὁ	old man
γῆ, ἡ	earth, land
γίγνομαι	I become, happen
γιγνώσκω	I know, realise, understand
γλῶσσα, γλώσσης, ἡ	tongue, language
γράφω	I write
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ	woman, wife

Δ

δακρύω	I cry
δέ (δ' + vowel) (2nd word in sentence)	and, but
δεῖ	it is compulsory/must (see 179)
δεινός, -η, -ον	terrible, strange
δεῖπνον, δείπνου, τό	dinner, meal
δέκα	ten
δένδρον, δένδρου, τό	tree
δεσπότης, δεσπότου, ὁ	master
δεύτερος, -α, -ον	second
δέχομαι	I receive
δή	indeed
δῆμος, δήμου, ὁ	people, community
διά + acc.	because of
διά + gen.	through
διὰ τί;	why?
διαφθείρω	I destroy
διδάσκαλος, διδασκάλου, ὁ	teacher
διδάσκω	I teach, tell
δίδωμι	I give
δίκαιος, -α, -ον	just, right, proper
δι' ὀλίγου	in a short time, soon
διότι	because
διώκω	I chase
δοκεῖ	it seems good (see p179)
δοῦλος, δούλου, ὁ	slave
δύο	two
δυστυχής, -ής, -ές	unlucky
δῶρον, δώρου, τό	gift

Ε

ἑαυτόν	himself
ἔδραμ-	str. aor. of τρέχω
ἐγώ	I
ἐθέλω	I wish, am willing

εἰ	if, whether
εἶ	you are (2nd pers. sg. pres. εἰμί)
ἐαν + fut. subj.	if (see p.210)
εἶδ-	str. aor. of ὁράω
εἰδώς	knowing
εἶεν	3rd pers. pl., pres. opt. εἰμί
εἴη	3rd pers. sg., pres. opt. εἰμί
εἰμί	I am
εἶναι	to be (infin. of εἰμί)
εἶπ-	str. aor. of λέγω
εἰρήνη, εἰρήνης, ἡ	peace
εἰς + acc.	into
εἷς, μία, ἕν	one
εἰσβάλλω	I throw into, invade
εἰσέρχομαι	I go into, enter
εἰσῆλθ-	str. aor. of εἰσέρχομαι
εἰς τοσοῦτον	to such an extent
εἶχ-	impf. of ἔχω
ἐκ (ἐξ before a vowel) + gen.	out of
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον	each
ἐκεῖ	there
ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο	that, those
ἐκκλησία, ἐκκλησίας, ἡ	assembly
ἐκφεύγω	I escape
ἐλείφθ-	aor. pass. of λείπω
ἐλάττων	smaller, fewer (comp. of ὀλίγος)
ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον	smallest, fewest (superl. of ὀλίγος)
ἐλεύθερος, -α, -ον	free
ἐλέχθ-	aor. pass. of λέγω
ἐλήφθ-	aor. pass. of λαμβάνω
Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ	Greece
Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ	a Greek
ἐλπίζω	I hope
ἐμαθ-	str. aor. of μανθάνω
ἐμαυτόν	myself
ἐμός, ἐμή, ἐμόν	my
ἐν + dat.	in, on
ἐνθάδε	here
ἐννέα	nine
ἔνοικος, ἐνοίκου, ὁ	inhabitant
ἐξ (before a vowel) + gen.	out of
ἕξ	six
ἐξέρχομαι	I go out/come out of
ἔξεστι	it is permitted (see p.179)
ἐξῆλθ-	str. aor. of ἐξέρχομαι
ἐπανέρχομαι	I return
ἐπανῆλθ-	str. aor. of ἐπανέρχομαι
ἐπει	when, since
ἔπειτα	then, next
ἐπί + acc.	against, onto, on, at
ἐπιστολή, ἐπιστολῆς, ἡ	letter
ἕπομαι	I follow
ἑπτα	seven
ἔργον, ἐργου, τό	work, deed
ἔρχομαι	I come, go
ἐρ-	fut. of λέγω
ἐρωτάω	I ask
ἐσθίω	I eat
ἑσπέρα, ἑσπέρας, ἡ	evening
ἔστε	be! (pl. imperative of εἰμί)
ἐτάχθ-	aor. pass. of τάσσω
ἔτι	still

ἑτοῖμος, -η, -ον	ready
ἔτος, ἔτους, τό	year
εὖ	well
εὐθύς	immediately
εὖ πράσσω	I do well, am successful, prosper
εὑρίσκω	I find
εὐρύς, εὐρεῖα, εὐρύ	wide
εὐτυχής, -ής, -ές	lucky, fortunate
ἔφη	he/she said
ἔφυγ-	str. aor. of φεύγω
ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν	hostile; *noun*: personal enemy
ἔχω	I have, hold
Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ	Greek
ἔσχ-	str. aor. of ἔχω
ἐταφ-	aor. pass. of θάπτω
εὑρίσκω	I find
εὐτυχης, -ής, -ές	lucky, fortunate
ἔφη	he/she said
ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν	hostile
ἕως	until, while

Z

Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ	Zeus
ζητέω	I seek
ζῷον, ζῴου, τό	animal

H

ἡ	the (f.)
ἤ	than
ἥ	who, which (f.)
ᾖ	3rd pers. sg., pres. subj. εἰμί
ἤ... ἤ...	either... or...
ἤγαγ-	str. aor. of ἄγω
ἠγγειλ-	aor. of ἀγγέλλω
ἡγεμών, ἡγεμόνος, ὁ	leader
ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδυ	sweet
ἠκουσ-	aor. of ἀκούω
ἦλθ-	str. aor. of ἔρχομαι
ἥλιος, ἡλίου, ὁ	sun
ἡμέρα, ἡμέρας, ἡ	day
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον	our
ἤνεγκ-	str. aor. of φέρω
ἠνέχθ-	aor. pass. of φέρω
ᾖς	2nd pers. sg., pres. subj. εἰμί
ἦτε	2nd pers. pl., pres. subj. εἰμί
ηὗρ-	str. aor. of εὑρίσκω
ἠχθ-	aor. pass. of ἄγω

Θ

θάλασσα, θαλάσσης, ἡ	sea
θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ	death
θάπτω	I bury
θάττων	faster (comp. of ταχύς)
θαυμάζω	I am amazed at, admire
θεά, θεᾶς, ἡ	goddess
θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ	god
θεραπεύω	I honour, worship, heal, cure, look after
θυγάτηρ, θυγάτρος, ἡ	daughter
θύρα, θύρας, ἡ	door
θύω	I sacrifice

Ι

ἰατρός, ἰατροῦ, ὁ	doctor
ἱερόν, ἱεροῦ, τό	temple
ἱερός, -ά, -όν	sacred
ἵνα + subjunctive/optative	in order to...
ἱππεύς, ἱππέως, ὁ	cavalryman, pl: ἱππεῖς cavalry
ἵππος, ἵππου, ὁ	horse
ἴσθι	be! (sg. imperative of εἰμί)
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν	strong

Κ

καθεύδω	I sleep
καί	and
καθίζω	I sit
καίπερ + partic.	although, despite
καίω	I burn
κακός, -η, -ον	bad, evil, wicked
καλέω	I call
καλός, -η, -ον	beautiful, fine
κατὰ γῆν	by land
κελεύω	I order
κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ	head
κίνδυνος, κινδύνου, ὁ	danger
κλέπτω	I steal
κολάζω	I punish
κόπτω	I cut down
κριτής, κριτοῦ, ὁ	judge
κρύπτομαι	I hide (myself)
κρύπτω	I hide (something)
κωλύω + infin.	I hinder, prevent (someone from doing something)
κωμή, κώμης, ἡ	village

Λ

λάθρᾳ	secretly
Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἱ (pl. noun)	the Spartans
λαμβάνω	I take, capture
λέγω	I say, speak, tell
λείπω	I leave
λήψ-	fut. of λαμβάνω
λίθος, λίθου, ὁ	stone
λιμήν, λιμένος, ὁ	harbour
λόγος, λόγου, ὁ	word
λύω	I release

Μ

μακρός, -α, -ον	long
μάλιστα	very much
μᾶλλον	more
μανθάνω	I learn
μάχη, μάχης, ἡ	battle
μάχομαι (+ dat.)	I fight (with)
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	great, big
μείζων, -ονος	greater, bigger (comp. of μέγας)
μέλλω (+ fut. infin.)	I am about to
μέν... δέ...	on the one hand... but on the other hand...
μέντοι	however
μένω	I wait, wait for, remain
μετά + acc.	after
μετά + gen.	with
μή...	do not...
μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν	no-one, nothing, no

μηδέποτε	never
μήτε... μήτε...	neither... nor...
μητήρ, μητρός, ἡ	mother
μικρός, -α, -ον	small
μισέω	I hate
μόνον	only
μόνος, μόνη, μόνον	alone
μῦθος, μύθου, ὁ	story
μῶρος, -α, -ον	foolish

N

ναυμαχία, ναυμαχίας, ἡ	sea battle
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ	ship
ναύτης, ναύτου, ὁ	sailor
ναυτικόν, ναυτικοῦ, τό	fleet
νεανίας, νεανίου, ὁ	young man
νεκρός, νεκροῦ, ὁ	corpse
νέος, νέα, νέον	new
νήσος, νήσου, ἡ	island
νικάω	I conquer
νίκη, νίκης, ἡ	victory
νομίζω	I think
νόμος, νόμου, ὁ	law, custom
νόσος, νόσου, ἡ	disease, illness
νῦν	now
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ	night

Ξ

ξένος, ξένου, ὁ	stranger
ξίφος, ξίφους, τό	sword

O

ὁ, ἡ, τό	the
ὅ	which (n.)
ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ	road, way, journey
οἶδα	I know
οἰκέω	I live (in), I inhabit
οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ	house
οἶνος, οἴνου, ὁ	wine
οἷός τ'εἰμί	I am able, can
οἰσ-	fut. of φέρω
ὀκτώ	eight
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον	little
ὀλίγοι, ὀλίγαι, ὀλίγα	few
ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό	name
ὅπλα, ὅπλων, τά	weapons, arms
ὁπόθεν	where from
ὅποι	where (to)
ὁποῖος, -α, -ον	what sort of
ὁπότε	when
ὅπου	where
ὅπως + subjunctive/optative	in order to...
ὁράω	I see
ὀργή, ὀργῆς, ἡ	anger
ὀργίζομαι (+ dat.)	I get angry (with)
ὄρος, ὄρους, τό	mountain
ὅς	who (m.)
ὅστις	who
ὅτε	when
ὅτι	because
ὅ τι	what, which
οὐ / οὐκ / οὐχ	not
οὗ	where

οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν	no-one, nothing, no
οὐδέποτε	never
οὖν (2nd word in sentence)	therefore
οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ	sky, heaven
οὔτε... οὔτε...	either... or...
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο	this, these
οὕτω(ς)	so
ὀψ-	fut. of ὁράω

Π

παιδεύω	I train
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ/ἡ	child, son, daughter, boy, girl
πάλαι	long ago, in the past, formerly
παρά + gen.	from (a person)
παρά + acc.	along, contrary to
παρασκευάζω	I prepare
παρέχω	I provide
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	all, every, whole of, entire
πάσχω	I suffer, experience
πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ	father
πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ	homeland, native land
παύομαι (+ gen.)	I cease (from)
παύω	I stop
πείθομαι (+ dat.)	I obey
πείθω	I persuade
πειράομαι	I try
πέμπτος, -η, -ον	fifth
πέμπω	I send
πέντε	five
περί + acc.	around
περί + gen.	about, concerning
πευσ-	fut. of πυνθάνομαι
πίνω	I drink
πίπτω	I fall
πιστεύω + dat.	I trust, believe
πιστός, -ή, -όν	trustworthy, faithful
πλεῖστος, -η, -ον	most, very many (superl. of πολύς)
πλε(ί)ων	more (comp. of πολύς)
πλέω	I sail
πλήν + gen.	except
πλοῖον, πλοίου, τό	boat, cargo ship
πλούσιος, -α, -ον	rich
πόθεν;	from where?
ποῖ;	to where?
ποιέω	I make, I do
ποιητής, ὁ	poet
ποῖος, -α, -ον	what sort of?
πολέμιοι, οἱ (pl. noun)	the enemy
πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ	war
πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ	city, state
πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ	citizen
πολλάκις	often
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	much, many
πορεύομαι	I march, travel
πόσοι πόσαι πόσα	how many?
πόσος, πόση, πόσον	how big? how much?
ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ	river
πότε;	when?
πότερον... ἤ...	whether... or...
ποῦ;	where?
πούς, ποδός, ὁ	foot
πράσσω	I do, manage

πρό + gen.	in front of
πρός + acc.	towards
προσβάλλω + dat.	I attack
προσέρχομαι	I approach
προσῆλθ-	str. aor.of προσέρχομαι
πρότερον	before, formerly
πρῶτον	at first
πρῶτος, -η, -ον	first
πύλη, πύλης, ἡ	gate
πυνθάνομαι	I learn, find out, ask
πῦρ, πυρός, τό	fire
πῶς;	how?

P

ῥᾴδιος, -α, -ον	easy
ῥᾴων	easier (comp. of ῥᾴδιος)

Σ

σεαυτόν	yourself (sg.)
σιγή, σιγῆς, ἡ	silence
σῖτος, σίτου, ὁ	food
σός, σή, σόν	your (sg.)
σοφία, σοφίας, ἡ	wisdom
σοφός, -η, -ον	wise
στρατεύω	I march
στρατηγός, ὁ	general
στρατιά, στρατιᾶς, ἡ	army
στρατιώτης, στρατιώτου, ὁ	soldier
στρατόπεδον, στρατοπέδου, τό	camp
στρατός, στρατοῦ, ὁ	army
συλλέγω	I collect, assemble
σύμμαχοι, συμμάχων, οἱ (pl. noun)	the allies
συμφορά, συμφορᾶς, ἡ	disaster
σῴζομαι	I get away safely
σῳζω	I save
σῶμα, σώματος, τό	body

T

τάσσω	I arrange
ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ	fast
τεῖχος, τείχους, τό	wall
τε(...) καί	both... and...
τέκνον, τέκνου, τό	child
τέλος	finally, at last
τέσσαρες, τέσσαρες, τέσσαρα	four
τέταρτος, -η, -ον	fourth
τιμάω	I honour
τίμη, τίμης, ἡ	honour
τις, τι	a certain, someone, something
τίς; τί;	who? what? which?
τό	the (n.)
τοιοῦτος, -η, -ον	such, of such a kind
τοσοῦτος, -η, -ον	so big, so great pl.: so many
τόξον, τόξου, τό	bow
τόπος, τόπου, ὁ	place
τότε	then
τρεῖς, τρεῖς, τρία	three
τρέχω	I run
τρίτος, -η, -ον	third
τυχή, τυχῆς, ἡ	chance, luck

Y

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	water

υἱός, υἱοῦ, ὁ	son
ὕλη, ὕλης, ἡ	wood, forest
ὑμέτερος, -α, -ον	your (pl.)
ὑπέρ + gen.	for, on behalf of
ὑπισχνέομαι	I promise
ὕπνος, ὕπνου, ὁ	sleep
ὑπό + gen.	by
ὕστερον	later
ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν	high

Φ

φαίνομαι	I appear
φέρω	I carry, bring
φεύγω	I flee, run away
φημί	I say
φιλέω	I love
φίλη, φίλης ἡ	girlfriend, friend (female)
φίλιος, -α, -ον	friendly
φίλος, φίλου, ὁ	friend (male)
φοβέομαι	I fear
φόβος, φόβου, ὁ	fear
φονεύω	I murder, kill
φύλαξ, φύλακος, ὁ	guard
φυλάσσω	I guard
φωνή, φωνῆς, ἡ	voice, sound

Χ

χαλεπός, -η, -ον	difficult, dangerous
χειμών, χειμῶνος, ὁ	storm
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ	hand
χράομαι + dat.	I use
χρή	it is necessary (see p.179)
χρήματα, χρημάτων, τά (pl. noun)	money, goods, property
χρήσιμος, -η, -ον	useful
χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ	time
χρύσος, χρύσου, ὁ	gold
χώρα, χώρας, ἡ	land

Ω

ὦ... + voc.	o....
ὦ	1st pers. sg., pres. subj. εἰμί
ὦμεν	1st pers. pl., pres. subj. εἰμί
ὡς	as, when, because
ὡς + future participle	in order to...
ὦσι(ν)	3rd pers. pl., pres. subj. εἰμί
ὥστε	that, with the result that
ὠφθ-	aor. pass. of ὁράω